

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, BID FORM
and
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

\$21,250,000*

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(Ellis County, Texas)

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds
Series 2018**

*Bids Due
September 18, 2018
at 10:00 a.m., Central Time*

*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement.

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

\$21,250,000*

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Ellis County, Texas)

UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018

THE SALE

BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID: The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Waxahachie Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$21,250,000* Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

- (1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
- (2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

BIDS BY INTERNET: Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on September 18, 2018. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on September 18, 2018 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2nd Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

BIDS BY FACSIMILE: Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Attention: Mr. Doug Whitt at (214) 279-8683 by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on September 18, 2018. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to dwhitt@samcocapital.com by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on September 18, 2018 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of either of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: The bids for the Bonds will be opened at the District's offices at 10:00 A.M. Central time, on September 18, 2018.

AWARD OF THE BONDS: In the order authorizing the Bonds adopted on August 16, 2018 (the "Bond Order"), the Board delegated authority to certain District officials (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") the authority to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") to establish the final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which terms will be evidenced in the Pricing Certificate (the Bond Order and the Pricing Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). Upon the opening of the bids as described above, the Designated Financial Officer shall award the Bonds by executing the Official Bid Form and the Pricing Certificate. The District, acting through the Designated Financial Officer, reserves the right to reject any and all bids and to waive any irregularities except time of submission.

THE BONDS

DESCRIPTION: The Bonds will be dated October 1, 2018 (the "Dated Date"). Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date and will be due on February 15, 2019, and each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

MATURITY SCHEDULE: The Bonds will be stated to mature on February 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

Maturity	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**	Maturity	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**	Maturity	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**
2019	\$505,000		2029	\$535,000	4.00%	2039	\$805,000	5.00%
2020	410,000		2030	560,000	4.00	2040	845,000	5.00
2021	470,000		2031	580,000	4.00	2041	890,000	5.00
2022	405,000		2032	600,000	4.00	2042	935,000	5.00
2023	420,000		2033	630,000	4.00	2043	985,000	5.00
2024	440,000		2034	655,000	4.00	2044	1,035,000	5.00
2025	455,000		2035	685,000	4.00	2045	1,090,000	5.00
2026	475,000		2036	710,000	4.00	2046	1,145,000	5.00
2027	495,000		2037	740,000	4.00	2047	1,200,000	5.00
2028	515,000		2038	770,000	4.00	2048	1,265,000	5.00

**See "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES" herein.

ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS: After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20%. The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the winning bidder any such adjustment within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser's compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD" herein and shall not affect such determination. The winning bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS: Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that maturities 2029 through 2048 be combined into term bonds (the "Term Bonds").

MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION: If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on February 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on February 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption "MATURITY SCHEDULE" (subject to adjustment, as provided in "ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS"). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the District and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

OPTIONAL REDEMPTION: The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT: The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 5, 2018 and an order (the "Bond Order") adopted by the District's Board on August 16, 2018. In the Bond Order, the Board delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval of a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the pricing certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See "THE BONDS – Security" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR: The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA., Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM: The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER: Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES: The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than \$109.00 nor greater than \$115.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate). No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used.** All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered. **The Bonds maturing February 15, 2019 through February 15, 2028 will bear rate(s) of interest determined by the bidder as specified above. The Bonds maturing February 15, 2029 through February 15, 2038 must bear a rate of 4.00% and the Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2039 must bear a rate of 5.00%, no other rates will be considered.**

BASIS OF AWARD: The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District.** The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid. In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to be submitted to the Texas Bond Review Board pursuant to Section 1202.008, Texas Government Code, as amended, the Initial Purchaser will be required to provide the District with a breakdown of its "underwriting spread" among the following categories: Takedown, Management Fee (if any), Legal Counsel Fee (if any) and Spread Expenses (if any).

ESTABLISHING THE ISSUE PRICE FOR THE BONDS: In order to provide the Issuer with information that enables it to comply with certain requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the winning bidder will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the Issuer or to the Issuer's municipal advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Issuer's Municipal Advisor") (within 5 business days of the date on which the 10% Test, as defined below, is satisfied with respect to each of the maturities of the Bonds) a certification as to the Bonds' "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") substantially in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Notice of Sale. In the event the winning bidder will not reoffer any maturity of the Bonds for sale to the Public (as defined herein) by the Closing Date, the Issue Price Certificate may be modified in a manner approved by the Issuer. Each bidder, by submitting its bid, agrees to complete, execute, and timely deliver the Issue Price Certificate, if its bid is accepted by the Issuer. It will be the responsibility of the winning bidder to institute such syndicate reporting requirements, to make such investigation, or otherwise to ascertain such facts necessary to enable it to make such certification with reasonable certainty. Any questions concerning such certification should be directed to Bond Counsel (identified in the Preliminary Official Statement).

For purposes of this section of this Notice of Sale:

- (i) "Public" means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a Related Party,
- (ii) "Underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead Underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public),
- (iii) "Related Party" means any two or more persons (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) that are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) at least 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and
- (iv) "Sale Date" means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the Issuer to the winning bidder.

All actions to be taken by the Issuer under this Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the Issuer by the Issuer's Municipal Advisor, and any notice or report to be provided to the Issuer may be provided to the Issuer's Municipal Advisor.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to this Notice of Sale to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid and, if so stated, in the Official Bid Form.

The Issuer intends to rely on Treasury Regulation section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of municipal bonds), which requires, among other things, that the Issuer receives bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds (the "Competitive Sale Requirement").

The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein. In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, bids will not be subject to cancellation and the winning bidder will be required to hold-the-offering-price of each maturity of the Bonds, other than any maturity 10% of which have been sold to the Public on the Sale Date at the initial offering prices or any higher prices ("Hold-the-Price Bonds"), as described in the next paragraph.

By submitting a bid, the winning bidder agrees, on behalf of each Underwriter participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that each Underwriter will neither offer nor sell any maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the Public during the period starting on the Sale Date and ending on the earlier of the following:

- (1) the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date; or
- (2) the date on which the Underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the Public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the Public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the Issuer when such bidder has sold at least 10% of a maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to the Public at a price that is not higher than the initial offering price to the Public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date.

In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, in order to assist the Issuer with documenting the establishment of the issue prices of the Bonds, the winning bidder agrees to promptly report to the Issuer the prices at which at least 10% of each maturity of the Bonds have been sold to the Public (the "10% Test") (if different interest rates apply within a maturity, each separate CUSIP number within that maturity will be subject to the 10% Test). That reporting obligation shall continue until 10% of each maturity of the Bonds is sold to the Public. By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each retail distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each Underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement, as applicable, to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder that either the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the Public, if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder or such Underwriter that either the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the Public, if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder or such Underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT: A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Waxahachie Independent School District", in the amount of \$425,00 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery.** No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:

Obligation of the District to receive information from winning bidder. In accordance with Texas Government Code, Section 2252.908, (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act") the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

(i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),

or

(ii) certifies in the Official Bid Form that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

In the event that the bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning bidder. That notification will serve as the District's conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and, unless the bidder is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form, such notification will obligate the winning bidder to promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the District to complete the award. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not comply with the requirements prescribed herein.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 – name of the governmental entity (*Waxahachie Independent School District*) and (b) item 3 – the identification number assigned to this contract by the District (*0001*) and description of the goods or services (*Purchase of the Waxahachie Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018*). **The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the "Disclosure Rules") require certain business entities contracting with the District to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, complete the unsworn declaration, sign, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's "electronic portal" to the District. The completed and signed Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the District's financial advisor at dwhitt@samccapital.com as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award.** Upon receipt of the final written award, the winning bidder must submit the Disclosure Form with original signatures by email to Bond Counsel as follows: jgulbas@mphlegal.com.

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. To the extent that the bidder is not exempt from filing a Disclosure Form and therefor makes such filing with the District, the Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provide

that such declaration is made "under oath and under penalty of perjury." Consequently, a bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. **Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no final award will be made by the District regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein.** Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC's website at https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm.

IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD: For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

NO BOYCOTT OF ISRAEL VERIFICATION: In accordance with House Bill 89 ("HB 89"), enacted during the 2017 Texas Legislative Session, the provisions of which became effective on September 1, 2017, the District and other governmental entities in the State may not enter into a contract with a company for goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it: (1) does not boycott Israel; and (2) will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract. To enable the District to comply with HB 89, and to enable it to contract for the sale of the Bonds, the Official Bid Form for the Bonds includes a written verification of the bidder to the effect described above. Each bidder should review the "no Israel boycott verification" included in the Official Bid Form prior to making a bid for the Bonds to determine whether such statement can be made, which is a condition to making a bid for the Bonds.

VERIFICATION OF NO DEALINGS WITH FOREIGN TERRORIST ORGANIZATIONS. Pursuant to Chapter 2252, Texas Government Code, the District will not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the bidder certifies that neither it nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the same, is a company that contracts with or provides supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization, as defined by Section 2252.151(2), Texas Government Code, or identified as a company known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization as identified on a list prepared and maintained under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153, Texas Government Code. By submitting a bid, the potential purchaser makes and certifies to the representations necessary and convenient for the compliance with the aforementioned laws and, at the request of the District, agrees to execute further written certifications as may be necessary or convenient for the District to establish compliance with the aforementioned laws.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT

To assist the winning bidder (the "Purchaser" or Initial Purchaser") in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), of the United Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION: The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Initial Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Initial Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Initial Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION" as described below.

FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT: The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with MSRB Rule G-32. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the date of Initial Delivery.

CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT: If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Initial Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Initial Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS –

CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Initial Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement, in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION: At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bonds ("Initial Delivery"), the Initial Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since August 31, 2017, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement; and (e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds. The Official Statement and this Official Notice of Sale will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the Board in the Order, and the Initial Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT: The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS: During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND: Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one or more fully registered Bonds in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond" or "Initial Bonds"), signed by the President and Secretary of the Board, by their manual or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bonds, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about October 17, 2018, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by November 15, 2018, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

CUSIP NUMBERS: It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Initial Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Initial Purchaser.

CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY: The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Initial Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the District's certificate regarding the Official Statement as described under CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Initial Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE: The obligations of the Initial Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

LEGAL OPINIONS: The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS: At any time before the Bonds are tendered for initial delivery to the Initial Purchaser, the Initial Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or

administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

RATINGS: The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and "AAA" by Fitch Ratings ("Fitch"), based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying ratings, including the Bonds, are "Aa3" by Moody's and "AA-" by Fitch. There is no assurance that such ratings will continue for any given period of time or that one or both of such ratings will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating companies, if in the respective judgment of said rating companies, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such ratings, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE: No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

ADDITIONAL COPIES: Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

In the Order, the Board has delegated to the Designated Financial Officer the authority to approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and to authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

/s/ Dusty Autrey

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/ Judd McCutchen

Secretary, Board of Trustees

Dated: September 10, 2018

OFFICIAL BID FORM

President and Board of Trustees
 Waxahachie Independent School District
 411 N Gibson Street
 Waxahachie, Texas 75165

September 18, 2018

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated September 10, 2018 of \$21,250,000* WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018 (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof.

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their Dated Date to the date of delivery to us, plus a cash premium of \$_____ (no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than \$109.00 nor greater than \$115.00 will be considered) for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**	Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**	Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)**
2019	\$505,000	_____	2029	\$535,000	4.00%	2039	\$805,000	5.00%
2020	410,000	_____	2030	560,000	4.00	2040	845,000	5.00
2021	470,000	_____	2031	580,000	4.00	2041	890,000	5.00
2022	405,000	_____	2032	600,000	4.00	2042	935,000	5.00
2023	420,000	_____	2033	630,000	4.00	2043	985,000	5.00
2024	440,000	_____	2034	655,000	4.00	2044	1,035,000	5.00
2025	455,000	_____	2035	685,000	4.00	2045	1,090,000	5.00
2026	475,000	_____	2036	710,000	4.00	2046	1,145,000	5.00
2027	495,000	_____	2037	740,000	4.00	2047	1,200,000	5.00
2028	515,000	_____	2038	770,000	4.00	2048	1,265,000	5.00

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

**See "TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES" for the interest range that must be bid for the denoted maturities.

Of the principal maturities of the Bonds set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
February 15	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST _____%

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of the syndicate manager. We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the _____ (bank), _____ (location), in the amount of \$425,000 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond(s) through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond(s) in immediately available funds at BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central time, on October 17, 2018 or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond(s) are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

The undersigned agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the District.

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

No Boycott of Israel Verification. To the extent this bid for the Bonds represents a contract for goods or services within the meaning of Section 2270.002 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, the Purchaser verifies, for purposes of Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code, that, except to the extent otherwise required by applicable federal law, at the time of execution and delivery of this bid and to the date of delivery of the Bonds, neither the Purchaser, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the Purchaser, boycotts or will boycott Israel. The terms "boycotts Israel" and "boycott Israel" as used in this paragraph have the meanings assigned to the term "boycott Israel" in Section 808.001 of the Texas Government Code, as amended.

By submission of this bid, and as a condition of the award and delivery of the Bonds, the Purchaser represents that, pursuant to Section 2252.152 of the Texas Government Code, and except to the extent otherwise required or permitted by or under federal law, neither the Purchaser, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the Purchaser (i) engages in business with Iran, Sudan, or foreign terrorist organization as defined in Section 2252.151(2), Texas Government Code or (ii) is a company listed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153 of the Texas Government Code. At the request of the District, the Purchaser agrees to execute further written certification as may be necessary or convenient for the District to establish compliance with these laws.

In accordance with Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act"), the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

(i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),

or

(ii) certifies below that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

Unless the bidder certifies that it is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form with the District, upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance and if required, the undersigned will complete an electronic form of the Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") through the Texas Ethics Commission's (the "TEC") electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed, notarized and sent by email to the District's financial advisor at dwhitt@samcocapital.com. The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the District from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

The Purchaser (mark one):

(i) Agrees to timely make a filing of a completed Disclosure Form with the District

or

(ii) Hereby certifies that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity .

Respectfully submitted,

(Purchaser)

(Signature - Title)

(Telephone)

[District signature page follows.]

ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this September 18, 2018 by a Pricing Officer of the District by authority conveyed in the Order of the Board of Trustees of the WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT adopted on August 16, 2018.

Pricing Officer

CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM **1295**

1 of 1

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

**OFFICE USE ONLY
 CERTIFICATION OF FILING**

1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.

2 Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.

Waxahachie Independent School District

3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.

0001

Purchase of the Waxahachie Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018

4	Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
			Controlling	Intermediary

5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.

6 UNSWORN DECLARATION

My name is _____, and my date of birth is _____.

My address is _____, _____, _____, _____, _____.
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in _____ County, State of _____, on the _____ day of _____, 20____.
(month) (year)

 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity
 (Declarant)

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

(Form of Certificate if at least 3 bids are received from underwriters)

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (“Purchaser”), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 issued by the Waxahachie Independent School District (“Issuer”) in the principal amount of \$21,250,000* (“Bonds”), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

(a) On the first day on which there was a binding contract in writing for the purchase of the Bonds by the Purchaser, the Purchaser’s reasonably expected initial offering prices of each maturity of the Bonds with the same credit and payment terms (the “Expected Offering Prices”) to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter are as set forth in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds, as attached to this Certificate as Schedule A. The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Bonds used by the Purchaser in formulating its bid to purchase the Bonds.

(b) The Purchaser had an equal opportunity to bid to purchase the Bonds and it was not given the opportunity to review other bids that was not equally given to all other bidders (i.e., no last look).

(c) The bid submitted by the Purchaser constituted a firm bid to purchase the Bonds.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term “Underwriter” means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By: _____

Name: _____

* Preliminary, subject to change. See “THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS” herein.

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

(Form of Certificate if less than 3 bids are received from underwriters)

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (“Purchaser”), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 issued by the Waxahachie Independent School District (“Issuer”) in the principal amount of \$21,250,000* (“Bonds”), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

(a) [Other than the Bonds maturing in ____ (“Hold-the-Price Maturities”), the][The] first prices at which at least ten percent (“Substantial Amount”) of the principal amount of each maturity of the Bonds having the same credit and payment terms (“Maturity”) was sold to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter (“Public”) are their respective initial offering prices, as listed in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds that is attached to this Certificate as Schedule A.

(Add (b) and (c) only if winning bidder designates one or more maturities as Hold-the-Price Maturities)

(b) On or before the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of the Bonds (“Sale Date”), the Purchaser offered to the Public each Maturity of the Hold-the-Price Maturities at their respective initial offering prices, as set forth in Schedule A hereto (“Initial Offering Price”).

(c) As set forth in the Notice of Sale, the Purchaser agreed in writing to neither offer nor sell any of the Hold-the-Price Maturities to any person at any higher price than the Initial Offering Price for each such Maturity until the earlier of the close of the fifth business day after the Sale Date or the date on which the Purchaser sells at least ten percent of a Hold-the-Price-Maturity of the Bonds to the Public at no higher price than the Initial Offering Price for such Maturity.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term “Underwriter” means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By: _____

Name: _____

* Preliminary, subject to change. See “THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS” herein.

SCHEDULE A

PRICING WIRE OR EQUIVALENT COMMUNICATION

(Attached)

BOND YEARS

\$21,250,000*

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(Ellis County, Texas)

UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018

Dated: October 1, 2018

Due: February 15

Year	Amount*	Bond Years*	
		Bond Years	Cumulative Bond Years
2019	\$ 505,000	165.5239	165.5239
2020	410,000	544.3857	709.9096
2021	470,000	1,094.0519	1,803.9615
2022	405,000	1,347.7469	3,151.7083
2023	420,000	1,817.6634	4,969.3717
2024	440,000	2,344.2188	7,313.5905
2025	455,000	2,879.1354	10,192.7259
2026	475,000	3,480.6908	13,673.4166
2027	495,000	4,122.2462	17,795.6628
2028	515,000	4,803.8016	22,599.4643
2029	535,000	5,525.3570	28,124.8213
2030	560,000	6,343.5512	34,468.3725
2031	580,000	7,150.1066	41,618.4791
2032	600,000	7,996.6620	49,615.1411
2033	630,000	9,026.4951	58,641.6362
2034	655,000	10,039.6894	68,681.3255
2035	685,000	11,184.5225	79,865.8480
2036	710,000	12,302.7167	92,168.5647
2037	740,000	13,562.5498	105,731.1145
2038	770,000	14,882.3829	120,613.4974
2039	805,000	16,363.8549	136,977.3522
2040	845,000	18,021.9657	154,999.3179
2041	890,000	19,871.7153	174,871.0332
2042	935,000	21,811.4650	196,682.4981
2043	985,000	23,962.8535	220,645.3516
2044	1,035,000	26,214.2420	246,859.5935
2045	1,090,000	28,697.2693	275,556.8628
2046	1,145,000	31,290.2967	306,847.1595
2047	1,200,000	33,993.3240	340,840.4835
2048	1,265,000	37,099.6291	377,940.1125

Average Maturity = 17.785

*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS - ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT
Dated: September 10, 2018

NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

In the opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein.

\$21,250,000*
WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Ellis County, Texas)
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018

Dated Date: October 1, 2018

Due: February 15, as shown on the inside cover page

The Waxahachie Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 5, 2018 and an order (the "Bond Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on August 16, 2018. In the Bond Order, the Board delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval of a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the pricing certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the Waxahachie Independent School District (the "District"). The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company New York, New York ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for (i) designing, constructing and equipping one new elementary school, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption").

MATURITY SCHEDULE
(On Inside Cover)

The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser" or the "Initial Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about October 17, 2018.

BIDS DUE SEPTEMBER 18, 2018 BY 10:00 A.M., CENTRAL TIME

**Preliminary, subject to change.*

\$21,250,000*
WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Ellis County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018

MATURITY SCHEDULE
Base CUSIP No.: 944097⁽¹⁾

Maturity Date 2/15	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix⁽¹⁾
2019	\$505,000			
2020	410,000			
2021	470,000			
2022	405,000			
2023	420,000			
2024	440,000			
2025	455,000			
2026	475,000			
2027	495,000			
2028	515,000			
2029	535,000			
2030	560,000			
2031	580,000			
2032	600,000			
2033	630,000			
2034	655,000			
2035	685,000			
2036	710,000			
2037	740,000			
2038	770,000			
2039	805,000			
2040	845,000			
2041	890,000			
2042	935,000			
2043	985,000			
2044	1,035,000			
2045	1,090,000			
2046	1,145,000			
2047	1,200,000			
2048	1,265,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

*Preliminary, subject to change.

⁽¹⁾ CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, nor the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Dusty Autrey, President	2016	2019	Businessperson
Clay Schoolfield, Vice President	2017	2020	Businessperson
Judd McCutchen, Secretary	2017	2020	Businessperson
Kim Kriegel, Member	2018	2021	Retired Educator
Joe Langley, Member	2016	2019	Pastor
John Rodgers, Member	2018	2021	Firefighter
Melissa Starnater, Member	2018	2021	Businessperson

APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with District</u>
Dr. Bonny Cain ⁽ⁱ⁾	Interim Superintendent	40 Years	Less than 1 Year
Lee Auvenshine	Deputy Superintendent of Human Resources and Legal Services	4 Years	4 Years
Shelle Blaylock	Assistant Superintendent of Leadership and Academics	22 Years	12 Years
Ryan Kahlden	Assistant Superintendent for Business and Finance	4 Years	4 Years
Clyde Melick	Assistant Superintendent of Facilities	2 Years	2 Years

- (i) Dr. Bonny Crain was named interim Superintendent in August 2018 in place of Dr. Jeremy Glenn who assumed the Superintendent position at another independent school district effective August 17, 2018. The Waxahachie ISD Board of Trustees is currently working to secure a superintendent search firm to assist them with finding candidates for the superintendent position, and hope to have a permanent superintendent in place by January 2019.

CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, Denton, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Ryan Kahlden
Assistant Superintendent for Business
and Finance
Waxahachie ISD
411 N. Gibson Street
Waxahachie, Texas 75165
(972) 923-4631

Doug Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210
Plano, Texas 75024
(214) 765-1469
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District or the Financial Advisor. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" AND "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE INITIAL PURCHASER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY ("TEA") DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT..... 1</p> <p>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT 2</p> <p>THE BONDS..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Authorization and Purpose..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Description 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Optional Redemption 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Security 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Permanent School Fund Guarantee 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Legality..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payment Record..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Amendments 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Defeasance 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Sources and Uses of Funds 4</p> <p>REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES..... 4</p> <p>BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM 4</p> <p>REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE..... 6</p> <p>AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES..... 6</p> <p>THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT..... 9</p> <p>STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS..... 10</p>	<p>CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM10</p> <p>THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM....13</p> <p>TAX RATE LIMITATIONS25</p> <p>DEBT LIMITATIONS26</p> <p>EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS26</p> <p>RATINGS.....27</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS.....27</p> <p>TAX MATTERS27</p> <p>INVESTMENT POLICIES29</p> <p>REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE..30</p> <p>FINANCIAL ADVISOR.....30</p> <p>LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS.....31</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION31</p> <p>LITIGATION.....32</p> <p>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS32</p> <p>WINNING BIDDER32</p> <p>CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO LITIGATION.....32</p> <p>CONCLUDING STATEMENT.....33</p>
<p>Financial Information of the District Appendix A</p> <p>General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy..... Appendix B</p> <p>Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel..... Appendix C</p> <p>Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017 Appendix D</p>	

SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

The District	The Waxahachie Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Ellis County, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
The Bonds	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$21,250,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 5, 2018, and an order (the "Bond Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on August 16, 2018. In the Bond Order, the Board delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval of a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the pricing certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for (i) designing, constructing and equipping one new elementary school, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").
Paying Agent/Registrar	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
Security	The Bonds will constitute direct and voted obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
Redemption	The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption").
Permanent School Fund Guarantee	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.")
Ratings	The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and "AAA" by Fitch Ratings ("Fitch"), based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (as defined herein) of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying ratings, including the Bonds, are "Aa3" by Moody's and "AA-" by Fitch. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" and "RATINGS" herein.)
Tax Matters	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and Appendix C - "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.")
Payment Record	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
Legal Opinion	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel.
Delivery	When issued, anticipated to be on or about October 17, 2018.

INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Waxahachie Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Ellis County, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") identified on the inside cover page hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the Order (as defined below) and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained by writing the Waxahachie Independent School District, 411 N. Gibson Street, Waxahachie, Texas 75165 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the initial purchaser of the Bonds (the "Purchaser" or "Initial Purchaser") to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS

Authorization and Purpose

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$21,250,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371"), an election held in the District on May 5, 2018 (the "Election") and an order (the "Bond Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on August 16, 2018. In the Bond Order, the Board delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval of a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the pricing certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for (i) designing, constructing and equipping one new elementary school, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds.

General Description

The Bonds will be dated October 1, 2018 (the "Dated Date") and will bear interest from the Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on the inside cover page of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on February 15, 2019 and on each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal amount or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's registration books at the close of business on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

Optional Redemption

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on August 15, 2028, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed. Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Order have been met and money sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed will have been received by the Paying Agent/Registrar prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice may state that said redemption may, at the option of the District, be conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such money by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption or upon any prerequisite set forth in such notice of redemption. If a notice of conditional redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not fulfilled, such notice will be of no force and effect, the District will not redeem such Bonds, and the Paying Agent/Registrar will give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that such Bonds have not been redeemed. Any notice of redemption so mailed shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given irrespective of whether received by the bondholder, and, subject to provision for payment of the redemption price having been made, AND ALL PRECONDITIONS STATED IN THE NOTICE OF REDEMPTION, IF

ANY, HAVING BEEN SATISFIED interest on the redeemed Bonds shall cease to accrue from and after such redemption date notwithstanding that a Bond has not been presented for payment.

Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Security

The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Permanent School Fund Guarantee

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

Legality

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

Payment Record

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

Amendments

In the Order, the District has reserved the right to amend the Order without the consent of any holder for the purpose of amending or supplementing the Order to (i) cure any ambiguity, defect or omission therein that does not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (ii) grant additional rights or security for the benefit of the holders, (iii) add events of default as shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of the Order that do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (iv) qualify the Order under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or corresponding provisions of federal laws from time to time in effect or (v) make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under the Order that are not inconsistent with the provisions thereof and which, in the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders.

The Order further provides that the majority of owners of the Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment not described above to the Order if it is deemed necessary or desirable by the District; provided, however, that without the consent of 100% of the holders in principal amount of the then outstanding Bonds so affected, no amendment may be made for the purpose of: (i) making any change in the maturity of any of the outstanding Bonds; (ii) reducing the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Bonds; (iii) reducing the amount of the principal of or redemption premium, if any, payable on any outstanding Bonds; (iv) modifying the terms of payment of principal or interest on outstanding Bonds or imposing any condition with respect to such payment; or (v) changing the minimum percentage of the principal amount of the Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment. Reference is made to the Order for further provisions relating to the amendment thereof.

Defeasance

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when payment of the principal amount of the Bonds plus interest accrued on the Bonds to their due date (whether such due date be by reason of stated maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with a paying agent, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money in an amount sufficient to make such payment and/or (2) Defeasance Securities, that will mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, and thereafter the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available to such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) for the payment of such defeased Bonds, including any insufficiency therein caused by the failure of such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) to receive payment when due on the Defeasance Securities. The District has additionally reserved the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Defeasance Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds. Current State law permits defeasance with the following types of securities: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or

instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, and (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent. The Pricing Officer is authorized to modify the categories of eligible Defeasance Securities to accommodate particular requests from investors. There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners will be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used for defeasance purposes or that for any other Defeasance Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. Provided, however, the District has reserved the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance will automatically cancel the Permanent School Fund Guarantee with respect to those defeased Bonds.

Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

Sources		
Par Amount of Bonds		\$
Accrued Interest		
Original Offering Premium		
Total Sources of Funds		\$ _____
Uses		
Deposit to Construction Fund		\$
Costs of Issuance		
Purchaser's Discount		
Deposit to Interest and Sinking Fund		
Total Uses of Funds		\$ _____

REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES

The Order establishes specific events of default with respect to the Bonds and provides that if the District defaults in the payment of principal or interest on the Bonds when due, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the continuation thereof for a period of 60 days after notice of default is given by the District or by any registered owner, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order covenants and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3rd 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Chapter 1371, which pertains to the issuance of public securities by issuers such as the District, including the Bonds, permits the District to waive sovereign immunity in the proceedings authorizing its bonds, but in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, the District has not waived sovereign immunity, as permitted by Chapter 1371. As a result, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors, by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion and by governmental immunity.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds) or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited Securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as, redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered to bond holders.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, nor the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE

Paying Agent/Registrar

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

Successor Paying Agent/Registrar

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

Initial Registration

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

Future Registration

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

Record Date For Interest Payment

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

Limitation on Transfer of Bonds

The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date or (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 45 days prior to its redemption date; provided, however, that such limitation shall not apply to uncalled portions of a Bond redeemed in part.

Replacement Bonds

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Ellis County Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District") is responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District is subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

Property Subject to Taxation by the District

Except for certain exemptions provided by State law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the District is subject to taxation by the District. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the District) include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the District has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a nonprofit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university; and designated historic sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income; solar and windpowered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; \$10,000 State mandated exemption to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over or disabled; a State mandated exemption up to a maximum of \$12,000 for real or personal property of disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of an individual who died while on active duty in the armed forces; a State mandated \$25,000 in market value exemption for all residential homesteads (see "Residential Homestead Exemptions" below); and certain classes of intangible property. The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. In addition, except for increases attributable to certain improvements, the District is prohibited by State law from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such residence qualified for an exemption based on the age or disability of the owner. The freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, a surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was 55 or older when the deceased spouse died and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. Pursuant to a constitutional amendment approved by the voters on May 12, 2007, legislation was enacted to reduce the school property tax limitation imposed by the freeze on taxes paid on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" herein). The school property tax limitation provided by the constitutional amendment and enabling legislation apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value. Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freepoint property," which is defined as goods detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freepoint property and decisions to continue to tax freepoint property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freepoint property are not subject to reversal. Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit", defined by the Tax Code as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year, after holding a public hearing, to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freepoint or goods-in-transit exemptions for tangible personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action prior to January 1 of the first tax years in which the governing body proposes to tax good-in-transit to continue its taxation of good-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. See "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" and "APPENDIX A – FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT - ASSESSED VALUATION" for a schedule of the amount of exemptions granted by the District.

A city or county may create a tax increment financing zone ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city or county to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Prior to September 1, 2001, school districts were allowed to enter into tax abatement agreements to encourage economic development. Under such agreements, a property owner agrees to construct certain improvements on its property. The school district in turn agrees not to levy a tax on all or part of the increased value attributable to the improvements until the expiration of the agreement. The abatement agreement could last for a period of up to 10 years. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for (1) the appraisal value, in excess of the "frozen" value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the city creating the TIF gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999) or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for certain school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate").

Valuation of Property for Taxation

Generally, property in the District must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal,

the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the District in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount that would not exceed the lesser of (1) the property's market value in the most recent tax year in which the market value was determined by the appraisal district or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the property's appraised value in the preceding tax year, plus (b) the property's appraised value the preceding tax year, plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. State law further requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be assessed solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property.

Article VII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permit land designated for agricultural use, open space or timberland to be appraised at its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products rather than at its fair market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the District can collect taxes for previous years based on the new value, including three years for agricultural use and five years for agricultural open-space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three years. The District, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District current estimates of appraised values within the District or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the District. While such current estimates of appraisal values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the District, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the District until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal rolls.

Residential Homestead Exemptions

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

Section 11.131 of the Texas Tax Code states that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until the surviving spouse remarries.

In addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created. Voters in the State approved a constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increasing the mandatory homestead exemption for school districts from \$15,000 to \$25,000, and requiring that the tax limitation for taxpayers who are age 65 and older or disabled be reduced to reflect the additional exemption. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM"

The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) during the period ending December 31, 2019.

District and Taxpayer Remedies

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

Levy and Collection of Taxes

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30th or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the District, the rate of taxation must be set by the Board based upon the valuation of property within the District as of the preceding January 1 and the amount required to be raised for debt service and maintenance and operations purposes. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve

percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and accrues interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may under certain circumstances be imposed by the District. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances.

Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted an M&O tax rate that was less than its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien for unpaid taxes upon real property, which lien is discharged upon payment. On January 1 of each year, such tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with the tax liens of other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property taxes takes priority over the claims of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. The automatic stay in bankruptcy will prevent the automatic attachment of tax liens with respect to post-petition tax years unless relief is sought and granted by the bankruptcy judge. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

Except with respect to taxpayers who are 65 years of age or older, at any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights, or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts.

THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in the County. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District does not collect an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the Ellis County Tax Assessor.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does not grant a portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not granted the freeport exemption. The District has not taken action to tax goods-in-transit.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Penalty</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Cumulative Total</u>
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7	2	9
April	8	3	11
May	9	4	13
June	10	5	15
July	12	6	18

After July, the penalty remains at 12%, and interest increases at the rate of 1% each month. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, a district may authorize an amount up to 20% attorney's collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.

STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Financing System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the "Foundation School Program", as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to

continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited M&O tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

Local Funding for School Districts

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the "Reform Legislation"), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to "compress" its tax rate by an amount equal to the "State Compression Percentage". The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate"). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein).

State Funding for School Districts

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a "Basic Allotment") for each student in average daily attendance ("ADA"). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as "Tier One" of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then "enriched" with additional funds known as "Tier Two" of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed

tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

2006 Legislation

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

2017 Legislation

The 85th Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85th Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

Wealth Transfer Provisions

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise, Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain measures in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed

tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition

The District's wealth per student for the 2018-19 school year is greater than the equalized wealth value. Pursuant to Chapter 41, Texas Education Code, the Commissioner has notified the District that its wealth per student exceeds the equalized wealth level set by law. Accordingly, the District has entered into one or more wealth equalization agreements with the Commissioner and/or other school districts for the purpose of implementing permitted wealth equalization options.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should continue to exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2017 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$212.49 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,056.4 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, when filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/ and with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org. Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml. A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the

transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2017, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 43.16% in public market equity investments; 12.86% in fixed income investments; 9.99% in absolute return assets; 7.02% in private equity assets; 7.40% in real estate assets; 6.83% in risk parity assets; 5.44% in real return assets; 6.99% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual payout from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

Management and Administration of the Fund

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608

(estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback of a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2017, the State Law Capacity increased from \$97,933,360,905 on August 31, 2016 to \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017.

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/, which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of late June, 2018, there were 185 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 747 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, 38 of such campuses have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder;

(iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of August 31, 2017, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 66.57% of the State Capacity Limit for the Guarantee Program. SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.5% in February 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 56%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may

include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of August 31, 2017, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.23% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

Charter District Risk Factors

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At May 31, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$5,104,222.

Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs

that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. TEA has initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance for fiscal year 2018. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATINGS" herein.

Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value ⁽¹⁾	Market Value ⁽¹⁾
2013	\$25,599,296,902	\$33,163,242,374
2014	27,596,692,541	38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017 ⁽²⁾	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573

⁽¹⁾ SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

⁽²⁾ At August 31, 2017, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$247.64 million, \$2,797.05 million, \$4.71 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$651.40 million, \$2,788.02 million, \$2.09 million, and \$3,399.05 million, respectively. At May 31, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$33,178,779,673 and a market value of \$43,191,172,031. May 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount ⁽¹⁾
2013	\$55,218,889,156
2014	58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023 ⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ As of August 31, 2017 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$117,195,729,512, of which \$42,929,639,489 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2017, there were \$74,266,090,023 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program and based on the cost value of the Fund at August 31, 2017 the capacity of the Guarantee Program at that date was \$111,568,711,072. The Program capacity at August 31, 2017 takes into account the increases in the cost value multiplier effective February 1, 2016 and March 1, 2017, which cumulatively increased the multiplier from 3 times to 3.50 times, but does not take into account the September 1, 2017 increase in the multiplier to 3.75 (which was subsequently reduced back to 3.50). Using the IRS Limit, which is the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity, of \$117,318,653,038, at August 31, 2017 98.28% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.72% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category⁽¹⁾

Fiscal Year Ended	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>
2014 ⁽²⁾	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017 ⁽³⁾	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023

⁽¹⁾ Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

⁽²⁾ Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

⁽³⁾ At May 31, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$76,899,424,513 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,272 school district issues, aggregating \$75,492,649,513 in principal amount and 43 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,406,775,000 in principal amount. At May 31, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$2,090,485,947 (based on the then effective capacity multiplier of 3.50 times and on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year, and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

2011 Constitutional Amendment

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3% and 3.5% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015 and 2016-2017, respectively. In September 2017, the SBOE approved a \$2.5 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2018-2019, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$102.99 million, which represents a 3.7% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$248.58, based on 2017 preliminary student average daily attendance of 4,971,656.277.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

Other Events and Disclosures

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in July 2016. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund. A report of the State Auditor released in March 2016 noted that based on an audit of certain real estate transactions managed by the GLO, during the period from September 2009 to May 2015, the GLO failed to comply with certain of such legal requirements relating to conflict of interest reporting, complying with written procedures and maintenance of documentation and other statutory and procedural requirements. That report, which includes the response of GLO management agreeing to the recommendations of the report, is available at <http://www.sao.texas.gov/reports/main/16-018.pdf>.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.0 million and \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2014 and 2015, respectively, and \$30.2 million for each of the fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/. The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 19, 2010, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org, and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

Annual Reports

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

Material Event Notices

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the

consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

Availability of Information

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

SEC Exemptive Relief

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on April 2, 1960 pursuant to Article 2784e-1, Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated, as amended ("Article 2784e-1").

Article 2784e-1 limits the District's annual M&O tax rate based upon a comparison between the District's outstanding bonded indebtedness and the District's taxable assessed value per \$100 of assessed valuation. Article 2784e-1 provides for a reduction of \$0.10 for each one percent (1%) or major fraction thereof increase in bonded indebtedness beyond seven percent (7%) of assessed valuation of property in the District. This limitation is capped when the District's bonded indebtedness is ten percent (10%) (or greater) of the District's assessed valuation which would result in an annual M&O tax rate not to exceed \$1.20. Lastly, the Texas Attorney General in reviewing the District's transcript of proceedings will allow the District to reduce the amount of its outstanding bonded indebtedness by the amount of funds (on a percentage basis) that the District receives in State assistance for the repayment of this bonded indebtedness (for example, if the District anticipates that it will pay 75% of its bonded indebtedness from State assistance, for the purposes of Article 2784e-1, the Texas Attorney General will assume that only 25% of the District's bonded indebtedness is outstanding and payable from local ad valorem taxes). The bonded indebtedness of the District after the issuance of the Bonds will be approximately 5.92% of the District's current taxable assessed valuation of property. See "APPENDIX A – Voted General Obligation Debt" herein.

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50, or such lower rate as described in the preceding paragraph, and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each

State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts". Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate".

On September 6, 2014, voters in the District approved a tax ratification election authorizing a maximum maintenance and operations tax of the District of \$1.17.

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduce the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues. The Bonds are issued for school building purposes pursuant to Chapter 45, Texas Education Code as new debt and are subject to the threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not used State assistance or projected property values to satisfy this threshold test.

DEBT LIMITATIONS

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay new debt secured by the district's debt service tax from a tax rate of \$0.50, and to pay all debt and operating expenses which must be paid from receipts of the district's maintenance tax from a tax not to exceed the maintenance tax limit described under the caption "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS." In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments, and, effective September 1, 1997, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving State assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund of the bond the amount of state assistance received or to be received in that year. The State Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. The Bonds are "new debt" and are therefore subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. See also "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS".

EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State of Texas. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District generally does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see Other Information – "Note 8. Defined Benefit Pension Plan" in the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

In addition to its participation in the TRS, the District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (the "TRS-Care Retired Plan"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan. The TRSCare Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the TRS. Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. For more detailed information concerning the District's funding policy and contributions in connection with the TRS-Care Retired Plan, see "Note 9.- School District Retiree Health Plan" in the Financial Statements.

As a result of its participation in TRS and the TRS-Care Retired Plan and having no other post-retirement benefit plans, the District has no obligations for other post-employment benefits within the meaning of Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement 45.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

RATINGS

The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and "AAA" by Fitch Ratings ("Fitch"), based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying ratings, including the Bonds, are "Aa3" by Moody's and "AA-" by Fitch. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM– Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed under the Guarantee Program" herein).

An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from Moody's and Fitch. The ratings of the Bonds by Moody's and Fitch reflect only the views of said companies at the time the ratings are given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the ratings. There is no assurance that the ratings will continue for any given period of time, or that the ratings will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by Moody's or Fitch, if, in the judgment of Moody's or Fitch, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the ratings, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

LEGAL MATTERS

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas, who will deliver its opinion, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C.

Bond Counsel represents the Financial Advisor and purchasers of school district bonds from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, but Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in the issuance of the Bonds. McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. also advises the TEA in connection with its disclosure obligations under the Federal securities laws, but such firm has not passed upon any TEA disclosures contained in this Official Statement. Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein, except that, in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information describing the Bonds in the Official Statement to verify that such description conforms to the provisions of the Order. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

TAX MATTERS

Opinion

On the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District, will render its opinion that, in accordance with statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof ("Existing Law"), (1) interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes will be excludable from the "gross income" of the holders thereof and (2) the Bonds will not be treated as "specified private activity bonds" the interest on which would be included as an alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code") Except as stated above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. See Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.

In rendering its opinion, Bond Counsel will rely upon (a) certain information and representations of the District, including information and representations contained in the District's federal tax certificate, (b) covenants of the District contained in the Bond documents relating to certain matters, including arbitrage and the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the property financed therewith, and (c) the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund. Failure by the District to observe the aforementioned representations or covenants could cause the interest on the Bonds to become taxable retroactively to the date of issuance.

The Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder contain a number of requirements that must be satisfied subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds in order for interest on the Bonds to be, and to remain, excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Failure to comply with such requirements may cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel is conditioned on compliance by the District with such requirements, and Bond Counsel has not been retained to monitor compliance with these requirements subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the reliance on the aforementioned information, representations and covenants. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result. Existing Law is subject to change by the Congress and to subsequent judicial and administrative interpretation by the courts and the Department of the Treasury. There can be no assurance that Existing Law or the interpretation thereof will not be changed in a manner which would adversely affect the tax treatment of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds.

A ruling was not sought from the Internal Revenue Service by the District with respect to the Bonds or the facilities financed with the proceeds of the Bonds. Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the representations of the Issuer that it deems relevant to render such opinion and is not a guarantee of a result. No assurances can be given as to whether the Internal Revenue Service will commence an audit of the Bonds, or as to whether the Internal Revenue Service would agree with the opinion of Bond Counsel. If an Internal Revenue Service audit is commenced, under current procedures the Internal Revenue Service is likely to treat the District as the taxpayer and the Bondholders may have no right to participate in such procedure. No additional interest will be paid upon any determination of taxability.

Federal Income Tax Accounting Treatment of Original Issue Discount

The initial public offering price to be paid for one or more maturities of the Bonds may be less than the maturity amount thereof or one or more periods for the payment of interest on the Bonds may not be equal to the accrual period or be in excess of one year (the "Original Issue Discount Bonds"). In such event, the difference between (i) the "stated redemption price at maturity" of each Original Issue Discount Bond, and (ii) the initial offering price to the public of such Original Issue Discount Bond would constitute original issue discount. The "stated redemption price at maturity" means the sum of all payments to be made on the Bonds less the amount of all periodic interest payments. Periodic interest payments are payments which are made during equal accrual periods (or during any unequal period if it is the initial or final period) and which are made during accrual periods which do not exceed one year.

Under Existing Law, any owner who has purchased such Original Issue Discount Bond in the initial public offering is entitled to exclude from gross income (as defined in section 61 of the Code) an amount of income with respect to such Original Issue Discount Bond equal to that portion of the amount of such original issue discount allocable to the accrual period. For a discussion of certain collateral federal tax consequences, see the discussion set forth below.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bond prior to stated maturity, however, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Original Issue Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Original Issue Discount Bond was held by such initial owner) is includable in gross income.

Under Existing Law, the original issue discount on each Original Issue Discount Bond is accrued daily to the stated maturity thereof (in amounts calculated as described below for each six-month period ending on the date before the semiannual anniversary dates of the date of the Bonds and ratably within each such six-month period) and the accrued amount is added to an initial owner's basis for such Original Issue Discount Bond for purposes of determining the amount of gain or loss recognized by such owner upon the redemption, sale or other disposition thereof. The amount to be added to basis for each accrual period is equal to (a) the sum of the issue price and the amount of original issue discount accrued in prior periods multiplied by the yield to stated maturity (determined on the basis of compounding at the close of each accrual period and properly adjusted for the length of the accrual period) less (b) the amounts payable as current interest during such accrual period on such Original Issue Discount Bond.

The federal income tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of Original Issue Discount Bonds which are not purchased in the initial offering at the initial offering price may be determined according to rules which differ from those described above. All owners of Original Issue Discount Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal, state and local income tax purposes of the treatment of interest accrued upon redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds and with respect to the federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds.

Collateral Federal Income Tax Consequences

The following discussion is a summary of certain collateral federal income tax consequences resulting from the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. This discussion is based on Existing Law, all of which is subject to change or modification, retroactively.

The following discussion is applicable to investors, other than those who are subject to special provisions of the Code, such as financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals allowed an earned income credit, certain S corporations with Subchapter C earnings and profits, foreign corporations subject to the branch profits tax, taxpayers qualifying for the health insurance premium assistance credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase tax-exempt obligations.

THE DISCUSSION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE EXHAUSTIVE. INVESTORS, INCLUDING THOSE WHO ARE SUBJECT TO SPECIAL PROVISIONS OF THE CODE, SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS AS TO THE TAX TREATMENT WHICH MAY BE ANTICIPATED TO RESULT FROM RECENTLY ENACTED LEGISLATION OR THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS BEFORE DETERMINING WHETHER TO PURCHASE THE BONDS.

Under section 6012 of the Code, holders of tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds, may be required to disclose interest received or accrued during each taxable year on their returns of federal income taxation.

Section 1276 of the Code provides for ordinary income tax treatment of gain recognized upon the disposition of a tax-exempt obligation, such as the Bonds, if such obligation was acquired at a "market discount" and if the fixed maturity of such obligation is equal to, or exceeds, one year from the date of issue. Such treatment applies to "market discount bonds" to the extent such gain does not exceed the accrued market discount of such bonds; although for this purpose, a de minimis amount of market discount is ignored. A "market discount bond" is one which is acquired by the holder at a purchase price which is less than the stated redemption price at maturity or, in the case of a bond issued at an original issue discount, the "revised issue price" (i.e., the issue price plus accrued original issue discount). The "accrued market discount" is the amount which bears the same ratio to the market discount as the number of days during which the holder holds the obligation bears to the number of days between the acquisition date and the final maturity date.

Future and Proposed Legislation

Tax legislation, administrative actions taken by tax authorities, or court decisions, whether at the Federal or state level, may adversely affect the tax-exempt status of interest on the Bonds under Federal or state law and could affect the market price or marketability of the Bonds. Any such proposal could limit the value of certain deductions and exclusions, including the exclusion for tax-exempt interest. The likelihood of any such proposal being enacted cannot be predicted. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the foregoing matters.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Subject to certain exceptions, information reports describing interest income, including original issue discount, with respect to the Bonds will be sent to each registered holder and to the IRS. Payments of interest and principal may be subject to backup withholding under section 3406 of the Code if a recipient of the payments fails to furnish to the payor such owner's social security number or other taxpayer identification number ("TIN"), furnishes an incorrect TIN, or otherwise fails to establish an exemption from the backup withholding tax. Any amounts so withheld would be allowed as a credit against the recipient's federal income tax. Special rules apply to partnerships, estates and trusts, and in certain circumstances, and in respect of Non-U.S. Holders, certifications as to foreign status and other matters may be required to be provided by partners and beneficiaries thereof.

State, Local and Foreign Taxes

Investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the tax implications of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds under applicable state or local laws. Foreign investors should also consult their own tax advisors regarding the tax consequences unique to investors who are not United States persons.

INVESTMENT POLICIES

Investments

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

Legal Investments

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities; (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which is unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent; (6) obligations issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors; (8) certificates of deposit or share certificates (i) that are issued by an institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or their respective successors, and are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (6) or in any other manner and provided for by law for District deposits, or (ii) where (a) the funds are invested by the District through (A) a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law, or (B) a depository institution that has its main office or branch office in the State of Texas that is selected by the District, (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, a custodian as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 (17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c3-3) as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; (9) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are fully secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1) above, (iii) require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and (iv) are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas; (10) certain bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (11) commercial paper with a stated maturity of 270 days or less that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (12) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission that comply with Securities and Exchange Rule 2a-7; (13) no-load mutual funds registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and either have a duration of one year or more and invest exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph, or have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities; and (14) local government investment pools organized in accordance with the Interlocal Cooperation Act (Chapter 791, Texas Government Code) as amended, whose assets consist exclusively of the obligations that are described above. A public funds investment pool must be continuously ranked no lower than "AAA", "AAA-m" or at an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (13) above, (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (13) above, clause (9) above and clauses (10) and (11) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

As a school district that qualifies as an "issuer" under Chapter 1371, the District is also authorized to purchase, sell, and invest its funds in corporate bonds, but only if the District has formally amended its investment policy to authorize such investments. Texas law defines "corporate bonds" as senior secured debt obligations issued by a domestic business entity and rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent by a nationally recognized investment rating firm. The term does not include a bond that is convertible into stocks or shares in the entity issuing the bond (or an affiliate or subsidiary thereof) or any unsecured debt. Corporate bonds must

finally mature not later than 3 years from their date of purchase by the school district. A school district may not (1) invest more than 15% of its monthly average fund balance (excluding bond proceeds, reserves, and other funds held for the payment of debt service) in corporate bonds; or (2) invest more than 25% of the funds invested in corporate bonds in any one domestic business entity (including subsidiaries and affiliates thereof). Corporate bonds held by a school district must be sold if they are at any time downgraded below "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof) or, with respect to a corporate bond rated "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof), such corporate bond is placed on negative credit watch. Corporate bonds are not an eligible investment for a public funds investment pool.

Investment Policies

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

State law also requires that District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

Additional Provisions

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

Current Investments

As of June 30, 2018, the District had approximately \$47,436,063 (unaudited) invested in Lone Star Investment Pool and \$945,229 (unaudited) invested in TexPool (both of which are government investment pools which generally have the characteristics of a money-market fund) and \$10,838,173 (unaudited) invested in certificates of deposit. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities; i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

FINANCIAL ADVISOR

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Financial Advisor") is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of their limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATINGS" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). For a description of the continuing disclosure information of the TEA, see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the electronic EMMA system at www.emma.msrb.org.

Annual Reports

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions an audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within 12 months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2018. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within 12 months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such 12-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

All financial information, operating data, financial statements and notices required to be provided to the MSRB shall be provided in an electronic format and be accompanied by identifying information prescribed by the MSRB. Financial information and operating data to be provided as set forth above may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document) available to the public on the MSRB's Internet Web site or filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule").

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of February in each year, and the Financial Statements must be provided by August 31 of each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

Notice of Certain Events

The District will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. The District will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or

governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

Availability of Information

Effective July 1, 2009, the SEC implemented amendments to the Rule which approved the establishment by the MSRB of EMMA, which is now the sole successor to the national municipal securities information repositories with respect to filings made in connection with undertakings made under the Rule. All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be filed with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB.

Limitations and Amendments

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

LITIGATION

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

WINNING BIDDER

On September 18, 2018, the Bonds were awarded to an investment bank or group of investment banks managed by _____ (the "Purchaser"). The initial reoffering yields for the Bonds were supplied to the District by the Purchaser. The initial reoffering yields shown on page ii hereof will produce compensation to the Purchaser of approximately \$_____.

CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO LITIGATION

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bond, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the District, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data,

of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since August 31, 2017, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement; and (e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds.

CONCLUDING STATEMENT

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer of solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

The Order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds will also approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and will authorize its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

This Official Statement will be approved by the Board for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the SEC's rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

/s/

Pricing Officer

APPENDIX A
FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Financial Information

ASSESSED VALUATION ⁽¹⁾

2018/19 Total Valuation.....		\$ 5,048,365,823
Less Exemptions & Deductions ⁽²⁾ :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$ 250,306,234	
State Over-65 Exemption	37,289,467	
Disabled Homestead Exemption Loss	36,931,528	
Local Option Over-65 Exemption	17,929,571	
Veterans Exemption Loss	3,524,202	
Pollution Control Exemption Loss	13,348,721	
Freeport Exemption	85,736,169	
Productivity Loss	416,610,961	
Homestead Cap Loss	56,478,991	
Solar/Wind Exemption Loss	1,651,813	
	<u>\$ 919,807,657</u>	
2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation		\$ 4,128,558,166

(1) Source: Certified Values from the Ellis Appraisal District as of July 2018. The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.
 (2) Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding ⁽¹⁾		\$ 225,407,560
Plus: The Bonds ⁽²⁾		<u>21,250,000</u>
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds ^{(1) (2)}		246,657,560
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2017) ⁽³⁾		<u>(2,444,294)</u>
Net General Obligation Debt		\$ 244,213,266
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation ⁽⁴⁾	5.92%	
2018 Population Estimate ⁽⁵⁾	54,181	
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$76,199	
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$4,507	

(1) Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.
 (2) Preliminary, subject to change.
 (3) Source: Waxahachie ISD Audited Financial Statement.
 (4) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement and "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's outstanding obligations.
 (5) Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

Fiscal Year	Net		% Collections ⁽⁴⁾	
	Taxable Valuation	Tax Rate		
			Current ⁽⁵⁾	Total ⁽⁵⁾
2006/07	\$ 2,308,358,606 ⁽¹⁾	\$ 1.5973 ⁽⁶⁾	97.87%	100.19%
2007/08	2,540,670,654 ⁽¹⁾	1.3600 ⁽⁶⁾	98.16%	100.75%
2008/09	2,752,384,833 ⁽¹⁾	1.3600	98.05%	100.69%
2009/10	2,825,334,510 ⁽¹⁾	1.3600	98.37%	100.65%
2010/11	2,795,858,079 ⁽¹⁾	1.4289	98.82%	100.57%
2011/12	2,779,853,164 ⁽¹⁾	1.4289	98.97%	100.32%
2012/13	2,792,877,813 ⁽¹⁾	1.4289	99.02%	99.86%
2013/14	2,828,279,744 ⁽¹⁾	1.4289	99.20%	100.14%
2014/15	2,989,791,312 ⁽¹⁾	1.4289	99.25%	99.91%
2015/16	3,158,322,088 ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	1.5539	99.18%	99.84%
2016/17	3,423,459,543 ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	1.5539	99.36%	99.53%
2017/18	3,768,788,597 ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	1.5539	99.00% ⁽⁷⁾	100.00% ⁽⁷⁾
2018/19	4,128,558,166 ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾			

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. See the Assessed Valuation section in this Appendix for additional information.
 (2) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.
 (3) Certified Values from the Ellis Appraisal District as of July 2018.
 (4) Source: Waxahachie ISD Audited Financial Statements.
 (5) Excludes penalties and interest.
 (6) The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.
 (7) Estimate as of August 2018.

TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION

	2013/14	2014/15 ⁽¹⁾	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.0400	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700
Debt Service	\$0.3889	\$0.2589	\$0.3839	\$0.3839	\$0.3839
Total Tax Rate	\$1.4289	\$1.4289	\$1.5539	\$1.5539	\$1.5539

(1) On September 6, 2014, the District successfully held a tax ratification election at which the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed \$1.17.

VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding ⁽¹⁾	Ratio Debt to A.V. ⁽²⁾
2006/07	\$ 2,308,358,606	\$ 103,002,289	4.46%
2007/08	2,540,670,654	99,297,290	3.91%
2008/09	2,752,384,833	97,616,118	3.55%
2009/10	2,825,334,510	95,823,734	3.39%
2010/11	2,795,858,079	120,084,284	4.30%
2011/12	2,779,853,164	118,413,379	4.26%
2012/13	2,792,877,813	116,419,295	4.17%
2013/14	2,828,279,744	114,597,537	4.05%
2014/15	2,989,791,312	186,480,473	6.24%
2015/16	3,158,322,088	229,920,693	7.28%
2016/17	3,423,459,543	227,183,180	6.64%
2017/18	3,768,788,597	224,252,560 ⁽⁴⁾	5.95%
2018/19	4,128,558,166 ⁽³⁾	241,849,828 ⁽⁴⁾	5.86%

(1) At Fiscal Year End. Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

(2) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information.

(3) Certified Values from the Ellis Appraisal District as of July 2018.

(4) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Ellis County	\$ 36,958,153	29.68%	\$ 10,969,180
City of Midlothian	78,070,453	1.24%	968,074
City of Waxahachie	66,661,918	100.00%	66,661,918
Total Overlapping Debt ⁽¹⁾			\$ 78,599,171
Waxahachie Independent School District ^{(2) (3)}			244,213,266
Total Direct & Overlapping Debt ^{(2) (3)}			\$ 322,812,437
Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation		7.82%	
Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt		\$5,958	

(1) Equals gross-debt less self-supporting debt.

(2) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(3) Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS

2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers ⁽¹⁾

<u>Name of Taxpayer</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Taxable Value</u>	<u>% of Net Valuation</u>
Walgreen Company	Distribution Center	\$ 106,599,043	2.58%
Dartco of Texas	Styrofoam Manufacturing	88,021,191	2.13%
Owens Corning Insulating System	Fiberglass Manufacturer	61,650,653	1.49%
James Hardie Building Products	Fiber Cement Plant	36,586,268	0.89%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	35,090,850	0.85%
AEP Industries	Utility	27,458,651	0.67%
Blue Lake Properties Ltd	Real Estate	27,419,430	0.66%
Cardinal CG Company	Coated Glass Manufacturing	25,757,770	0.62%
Austin Bridge & Road	Bridge Fabrication	25,722,060	0.62%
Oxford at Crossroads LP	Apartments	24,500,000	0.59%
		<u>\$ 458,805,916</u>	<u>11.11%</u>

2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers ⁽²⁾

<u>Name of Taxpayer</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Taxable Value</u>	<u>% of Net Valuation</u>
Walgreen Company	Distribution Center	\$ 124,358,810	3.30%
Dartco of Texas	Styrofoam Manufacturing	86,077,751	2.28%
Owens Corning Insulating System	Fiberglass Manufacturer	61,717,365	1.64%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	30,834,180	0.82%
AEP Industries	Utility	29,320,868	0.78%
James Hardie Building Products	Fiber Cement Plant	28,529,035	0.76%
Oxford at Crossroads LP	Apartments	26,159,130	0.69%
Cardinal CG Company	Coated Glass Manufacturing	25,561,707	0.68%
Wax 77 Investors LP	Commercial	25,488,820	0.68%
Blue Lake Properties Ltd	Real Estate	24,000,000	0.64%
		<u>\$ 462,047,666</u>	<u>12.26%</u>

2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers ⁽²⁾

<u>Name of Taxpayer</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Taxable Value</u>	<u>% of Net Valuation</u>
Walgreen Company	Distribution Center	\$ 131,280,766	3.83%
Dartco of Texas	Styrofoam Manufacturing	81,346,281	2.38%
Owens Corning Insulating System	Fiberglass Manufacturer	62,898,710	1.84%
James Hardie Building Products	Fiber Cement Plant	37,381,259	1.09%
AEP Industries	Utility	31,703,388	0.93%
Oncor Electric Delivery	Electric Utility	28,504,320	0.83%
Austin Bridge & Road	Bridge Fabrication	27,291,390	0.80%
Cardinal CG Company	Coated Glass Manufacturing	26,282,286	0.77%
Oxford at Crossroads LP	Apartments	23,400,000	0.68%
Blue Lake Properties Ltd	Real Estate	22,000,000	0.64%
		<u>\$ 472,088,400</u>	<u>13.79%</u>

(1) Source: Ellis Appraisal District.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY

<u>Category</u>	<u>2018/19</u> ⁽¹⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2017/18</u> ⁽²⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2016/17</u> ⁽²⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 2,483,021,916	49.18%	\$ 2,138,099,375	45.98%	\$ 1,816,201,399	43.27%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	195,108,955	3.86%	190,832,355	4.10%	171,026,699	4.07%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	44,209,685	0.88%	44,463,030	0.96%	45,949,720	1.09%
Real, Acreage	448,062,862	8.88%	431,686,182	9.28%	375,265,904	8.94%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	215,423,069	4.27%	198,926,453	4.28%	174,753,518	4.16%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	721,511,506	14.29%	710,328,572	15.28%	677,698,532	16.15%
Oil & Gas	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Utilities	105,580,948	2.09%	99,131,201	2.13%	96,979,660	2.31%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	757,431,152	15.00%	763,972,063	16.43%	768,270,301	18.30%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	7,764,840	0.15%	7,836,880	0.17%	7,575,930	0.18%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	54,594,550	1.08%	49,598,655	1.07%	49,751,005	1.19%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>15,656,340</u>	<u>0.31%</u>	<u>15,304,790</u>	<u>0.33%</u>	<u>13,949,990</u>	<u>0.33%</u>
Total Appraised Value	\$ 5,048,365,823	100.00%	\$ 4,650,179,556	100.00%	\$ 4,197,422,658	100.00%
Less:						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 56,478,991		\$ 47,347,008		\$ 21,739,497	
Productivity Loss	416,610,961		401,562,813		344,801,167	
Exemptions	<u>446,717,705</u> ⁽³⁾		<u>432,481,138</u> ⁽³⁾		<u>407,422,451</u> ⁽³⁾	
Total Exemptions/Deductions ⁽⁴⁾	\$ 919,807,657		\$ 881,390,959		\$ 773,963,115	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$ 4,128,558,166		\$ 3,768,788,597		\$ 3,423,459,543	

<u>Category</u>	<u>2015/16</u> ⁽²⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2014/15</u> ⁽²⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2013/14</u> ⁽²⁾	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 1,604,065,764	41.28%	\$ 1,473,164,988	41.00%	\$ 1,383,945,506	40.30%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	165,675,422	4.26%	140,560,930	3.91%	131,838,949	3.84%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	52,032,006	1.34%	45,706,256	1.27%	46,661,924	1.36%
Real, Acreage	374,657,375	9.64%	351,764,893	9.79%	348,089,914	10.14%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	158,504,743	4.08%	152,116,729	4.23%	138,483,816	4.03%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	624,298,739	16.07%	573,345,423	15.96%	555,954,743	16.19%
Oil & Gas	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Utilities	97,069,750	2.50%	93,025,060	2.59%	96,852,980	2.82%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	753,297,011	19.38%	717,257,419	19.96%	693,994,927	20.21%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	8,378,780	0.22%	8,695,880	0.24%	9,044,690	0.26%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	36,476,905	0.94%	27,400,344	0.76%	21,103,226	0.61%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>11,615,670</u>	<u>0.30%</u>	<u>10,147,840</u>	<u>0.28%</u>	<u>8,151,130</u>	<u>0.24%</u>
Total Appraised Value	\$ 3,886,072,165	100.00%	\$ 3,593,185,762	100.00%	\$ 3,434,121,805	100.00%
Less:						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 5,834,055		\$ 4,745,632		\$ 908,885	
Productivity Loss	345,333,818		324,650,377		328,244,776	
Exemptions	<u>376,582,204</u>		<u>273,998,441</u>		<u>276,688,400</u>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions ⁽⁴⁾	\$ 727,750,077		\$ 603,394,450		\$ 605,842,061	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$ 3,158,322,088		\$ 2,989,791,312		\$ 2,828,279,744	

(1) Source: Certified Totals from the Ellis Appraisal District as of July 2018.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(3) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(4) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds ^{(1) (2)}	Plus: The Bonds ⁽³⁾	Total ^{(1) (2) (3)}	Bonds Unpaid At Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2019	\$ 3,147,732.00	\$ 505,000.00	\$ 3,652,732.00	\$ 241,849,828.05	1.49%
2020	3,167,618.10	410,000.00	3,577,618.10	238,272,209.95	2.95%
2021	3,224,231.60	470,000.00	3,694,231.60	234,577,978.35	4.45%
2022	3,296,707.50	405,000.00	3,701,707.50	230,876,270.85	5.96%
2023	3,389,228.90	420,000.00	3,809,228.90	227,067,041.95	7.51%
2024	3,486,071.00	440,000.00	3,926,071.00	223,140,970.95	9.11%
2025	5,835,720.15	455,000.00	6,290,720.15	216,850,250.80	11.67%
2026	5,800,981.10	475,000.00	6,275,981.10	210,574,269.70	14.23%
2027	8,130,000.00	495,000.00	8,625,000.00	201,949,269.70	17.74%
2028	8,485,000.00	515,000.00	9,000,000.00	192,949,269.70	21.41%
2029	8,865,000.00	535,000.00	9,400,000.00	183,549,269.70	25.24%
2030	9,255,000.00	560,000.00	9,815,000.00	173,734,269.70	29.23%
2031	4,204,269.70	580,000.00	4,784,269.70	168,950,000.00	31.18%
2032	10,035,000.00	600,000.00	10,635,000.00	158,315,000.00	35.51%
2033	10,480,000.00	630,000.00	11,110,000.00	147,205,000.00	40.04%
2034	10,890,000.00	655,000.00	11,545,000.00	135,660,000.00	44.74%
2035	11,310,000.00	685,000.00	11,995,000.00	123,665,000.00	49.63%
2036	11,755,000.00	710,000.00	12,465,000.00	111,200,000.00	54.71%
2037	12,230,000.00	740,000.00	12,970,000.00	98,230,000.00	59.99%
2038	9,420,000.00	770,000.00	10,190,000.00	88,040,000.00	64.14%
2039	9,835,000.00	805,000.00	10,640,000.00	77,400,000.00	68.47%
2040	10,245,000.00	845,000.00	11,090,000.00	66,310,000.00	72.99%
2041	10,660,000.00	890,000.00	11,550,000.00	54,760,000.00	77.69%
2042	11,090,000.00	935,000.00	12,025,000.00	42,735,000.00	82.59%
2043	11,535,000.00	985,000.00	12,520,000.00	30,215,000.00	87.69%
2044	12,000,000.00	1,035,000.00	13,035,000.00	17,180,000.00	93.00%
2045	12,480,000.00	1,090,000.00	13,570,000.00	3,610,000.00	98.53%
2046		1,145,000.00	1,145,000.00	2,465,000.00	99.00%
2047		1,200,000.00	1,200,000.00	1,265,000.00	99.48%
2048		1,265,000.00	1,265,000.00	-	100.00%
Total	<u>\$ 224,252,560.05</u>	<u>\$ 21,250,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 245,502,560.05</u>		

(1) Includes principal and the annual mandatory sinking fund payments on the District's outstanding Unlimited Tax Qualified School Construction Bonds Series 2011 (Direct Subsidy) (the "2011 Bonds").
(2) Excludes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.
(3) Preliminary, subject to change.

DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service ⁽¹⁾	Less:	Plus:			Combined Total ^{(1) (2) (3) (4)}
		QSCB Direct Pay Subsidy ⁽²⁾	The Bonds ⁽³⁾			
			Principal	Interest	Total	
2019	\$ 16,348,725.00	\$ 104,352.50	\$ 505,000.00	\$ 807,124.17	\$ 1,312,124.17	\$ 17,556,496.67
2020	16,348,850.00	104,352.50	410,000.00	912,750.00	1,322,750.00	17,567,247.50
2021	16,348,781.26	104,352.50	470,000.00	899,550.00	1,369,550.00	17,613,978.76
2022	16,349,668.76	104,352.50	405,000.00	886,425.00	1,291,425.00	17,536,741.26
2023	16,351,043.76	104,352.50	420,000.00	871,950.00	1,291,950.00	17,538,641.26
2024	16,351,025.00	104,352.50	440,000.00	854,750.00	1,294,750.00	17,541,422.50
2025	16,352,125.00	104,352.50	455,000.00	836,850.00	1,291,850.00	17,539,622.50
2026	16,351,050.00	104,352.50	475,000.00	818,250.00	1,293,250.00	17,539,947.50
2027	16,249,125.00		495,000.00	798,850.00	1,293,850.00	17,542,975.00
2028	16,248,475.00		515,000.00	778,650.00	1,293,650.00	17,542,125.00
2029	16,250,975.00		535,000.00	757,650.00	1,292,650.00	17,543,625.00
2030	16,249,450.00		560,000.00	735,750.00	1,295,750.00	17,545,200.00
2031	16,248,225.00		580,000.00	712,950.00	1,292,950.00	17,541,175.00
2032	16,252,012.50		600,000.00	689,350.00	1,289,350.00	17,541,362.50
2033	16,250,837.50		630,000.00	664,750.00	1,294,750.00	17,545,587.50
2034	16,250,487.50		655,000.00	639,050.00	1,294,050.00	17,544,537.50
2035	16,248,643.76		685,000.00	612,250.00	1,297,250.00	17,545,893.76
2036	16,248,925.00		710,000.00	584,350.00	1,294,350.00	17,543,275.00
2037	16,248,075.00		740,000.00	555,350.00	1,295,350.00	17,543,425.00
2038	12,896,550.00		770,000.00	525,150.00	1,295,150.00	14,191,700.00
2039	12,899,225.00		805,000.00	489,625.00	1,294,625.00	14,193,850.00
2040	12,896,300.00		845,000.00	448,375.00	1,293,375.00	14,189,675.00
2041	12,898,700.00		890,000.00	405,000.00	1,295,000.00	14,193,700.00
2042	12,899,300.00		935,000.00	359,375.00	1,294,375.00	14,193,675.00
2043	12,897,700.00		985,000.00	311,375.00	1,296,375.00	14,194,075.00
2044	12,898,100.00		1,035,000.00	260,875.00	1,295,875.00	14,193,975.00
2045	12,894,800.00		1,090,000.00	207,750.00	1,297,750.00	14,192,550.00
2046			1,145,000.00	151,875.00	1,296,875.00	1,296,875.00
2047			1,200,000.00	93,250.00	1,293,250.00	1,293,250.00
2048			1,265,000.00	31,625.00	1,296,625.00	1,296,625.00
	<u>\$ 412,727,175.04</u>	<u>\$ 834,820.00</u>	<u>\$ 21,250,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 17,700,874.17</u>	<u>\$ 38,950,874.17</u>	<u>\$ 450,843,229.21</u>

(1) Includes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds. Includes principal and the annual mandatory sinking fund payments on the District's outstanding Unlimited Tax Qualified School Construction Bonds Series 2011 (Direct Subsidy) (the "2011 Bonds").

(2) Assumes the Federal Subsidy Payment (defined below) is deposited and applied to the Interest and Sinking Fund Budget. The amount of the original Federal Subsidy for the District's Unlimited Tax Qualified School Construction Bonds Series 2011 (Direct Subsidy) (the "2011 Bonds") has been reduced by 6.2% in 2018/19 by the United States government. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 ("ARRA") authorized the issuance of "Qualified School Construction Bonds", which permitted issuers to elect to receive payments equal to 100% of each interest payment payable on the "Qualified School Construction Bonds (the "Federal Subsidy"). Under the program, the District should receive payments from the United States government with respect to the Series 2011 Bonds equal to 100% of each interest payment. Under the Budget Control Act of 2011, the Federal Subsidy were reduced. The sequestration reduction rate is set at 6.2% for payments processed on or after October 1, 2018, and on or before Sept. 30, 2019, at which time the rate will again be subject to change. Such reductions in Federal Subsidy for 2018 will not materially or adversely affect the financial condition of the District. At this time, the District can make no representations as to the effect or the amount of any reduction in the Federal Subsidy in any future years. For illustrative purposes, the subsidy reduction rate is assumed to remain at 6.2% in future years.

(3) Preliminary, subject to change.

(4) Based on its wealth per student, the District does not expect to receive any Instructional Facilities Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state financial assistance for debt service in 2018/19. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement. The District will not receive any Instructional Facilities Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state aid in 2017/18, but will receive additional state aid for the increase in the homestead exemption which took effect in 2015/16.

TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement ⁽¹⁾	\$ 17,613,978.76
Projected State Financial Assistance for Hold Harmless of Increased Homestead Exemption ⁽²⁾	<u>355,000.00</u>
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	\$ 17,258,978.76
\$0.42657 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces	\$ 17,258,978.90
2018/19 Certified Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$ 4,128,558,166

(1) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement. The District will not receive any Instructional Facilities Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state aid in 2017/18, but will receive additional state aid for the increase in the homestead exemption which took effect in 2015/16.

AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will not have authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from the May 5, 2018 bond election or any other election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES ⁽¹⁾

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Beginning Fund Balance	\$ 28,739,500	\$ 23,941,018	\$ 25,016,847	\$ 20,457,183	\$ 21,926,489
Revenues:					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 29,333,621	\$ 29,934,320	\$ 35,532,849	\$ 37,236,244	\$ 40,408,641
State Sources	23,759,722	26,452,310	30,207,475	32,720,248	33,109,628
Federal Sources & Other	52,323	366,097	557,588	548,699	1,815,447
Total Revenues	\$ 53,145,666	\$ 56,752,727	\$ 66,297,912	\$ 70,505,191	\$ 75,333,716
Expenditures:					
Instruction	\$ 30,142,722	\$ 33,603,948	\$ 36,511,051	\$ 38,570,065	\$ 40,829,313
Instructional Resources & Media Services	769,831	793,697	864,159	973,108	960,891
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	494,471	663,106	769,605	638,796	750,526
Instructional Leadership	639,308	601,102	787,036	1,281,476	1,332,131
School Leadership	3,489,091	3,551,366	3,824,670	4,040,689	4,320,013
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	1,878,224	1,173,710	1,424,542	1,623,877	1,913,998
Health Services	723,344	757,020	811,090	848,753	943,186
Student (Pupil) Transportation	2,008,162	1,998,533	2,182,089	2,066,512	2,170,216
Food Services	-	-	-	-	14,274
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	2,112,739	2,308,111	2,594,509	2,945,131	3,071,981
General Administration	1,486,805	1,538,535	1,697,098	1,997,601	2,228,011
Plant Maintenance and Operations	5,769,380	5,722,889	6,211,360	6,306,183	6,666,027
Security and Monitoring Services	410,067	509,331	704,999	871,712	901,707
Data Processing Services	6,158,375	1,261,350	1,170,038	1,184,701	1,729,142
Community Services	211,782	212,248	230,551	242,007	265,891
Debt Service - Principal on Long Term Debt	-	120,800	108,653	1,114,566	275,000
Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt	-	-	945,727	2,206,234	2,060,729
Facilities Acquisition and Construction	1,330,487	886,122	9,725,085	1,810,567	999,766
Other Intergovernmental Charges	336,762	334,059	350,669	377,083	404,364
Total Expenditures	\$ 57,961,550	\$ 56,035,927	\$ 70,912,931	\$ 69,099,061	\$ 71,837,166
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ (4,815,884)	\$ 716,800	\$ (4,615,019)	\$ 1,406,130	\$ 3,496,550
Other Resources and (Uses):					
Sale of Property	\$ 17,402	\$ 15,010	\$ 55,355	\$ 63,176	\$ 2,898,704
Proceeds from Capital Leases	-	344,019	-	-	-
Total Other Resources (Uses)	\$ 17,402	\$ 359,029	\$ 55,355	\$ 63,176	\$ 2,898,704
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ (4,798,482)	\$ 1,075,829	\$ (4,559,664)	\$ 1,469,306	\$ 6,395,254
Ending Fund Balance	\$ 23,941,018	\$ 25,016,847	\$ 20,457,183	\$ 21,926,489	\$ 28,321,743

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2017/18 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in the Official Statement.
(2) The District estimates that its General Fund balance for the Fiscal Year ending August 31, 2018 will total approximately \$28,500,000. The District is considering a facility improvement in FYE 2019 that will cost approximately \$6mm to be paid from the General Fund.

CHANGE IN NET ASSETS ⁽¹⁾

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Revenues:					
Program Revenues:					
Charges for Services	\$ 2,262,691	\$ 2,564,545	\$ 2,667,497	\$ 2,991,304	\$ 4,652,845
Operating Grants and Contributions	8,424,992	8,912,156	10,226,917	11,467,918	11,200,566
General Revenues:					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	28,681,163	29,082,636	34,779,955	36,599,043	39,431,551
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	10,722,250	10,866,445	7,712,939	12,007,723	12,931,828
State Aid - Formula Grants	20,756,906	23,477,811	26,860,288	29,152,560	29,178,310
Grants and Contributions not Restricted	-	-	-	31,215	-
Investment Earnings	46,856	19,732	68,449	383,563	806,133
Miscellaneous	82,687	246,489	328,922	380,883	3,151,806
	<u>\$ 70,977,545</u>	<u>\$ 75,169,814</u>	<u>\$ 82,644,967</u>	<u>\$ 93,014,209</u>	<u>\$ 101,353,039</u>
Expenses:					
Instruction	\$ 36,184,868	\$ 39,380,247	\$ 42,600,038	\$ 46,540,123	\$ 48,216,231
Instruction Resources & Media Services	884,295	905,178	982,208	1,154,255	1,123,186
Curriculum & Staff Development	628,436	726,721	856,660	773,618	901,541
Instructional Leadership	825,743	795,649	963,988	1,508,696	1,512,570
School Leadership	3,627,851	3,690,598	3,912,213	4,372,098	4,625,049
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	1,918,069	1,933,838	2,250,029	2,794,994	2,958,827
Health Services	723,344	757,020	803,806	886,913	976,806
Student Transportation	2,003,788	1,990,786	2,091,395	2,137,912	2,223,504
Food Service	299,787	300,494	303,413	303,227	336,615
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	2,771,156	2,934,208	3,265,422	3,811,130	4,160,024
General Administration	1,591,294	1,635,738	1,772,140	2,176,809	2,306,547
Plant Maintenance & Operations	5,807,451	5,664,578	5,884,317	6,205,760	6,672,024
Security and Monitoring Services	421,137	528,686	713,201	900,699	939,027
Data Processing Services	1,472,496	1,533,166	1,395,399	1,571,232	2,110,716
Community Services	211,782	212,248	228,591	250,107	284,591
Interest on Long-term Debt	7,120,448	6,962,755	6,902,399	10,061,638	10,865,185
Capital Outlay	65,453	182,358	29,974	93,603	103,392
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	132,951	2,400	1,169,735	491,994	5,300
Enterprise Fund - National School Breakfast & Lunch	2,996,690	3,191,457	3,383,715	3,752,467	3,799,806
Enterprise Fund - Childcare Fund	154,238	173,112	170,060	207,227	271,942
Enterprise Fund - Lighthouse for Learning	16,740	16,418	17,589	15,750	16,772
Other Intergovernmental Charges	336,762	334,059	350,669	377,083	404,364
Total Expenditures	<u>\$ 70,194,779</u>	<u>\$ 73,851,714</u>	<u>\$ 80,046,961</u>	<u>\$ 90,387,335</u>	<u>\$ 94,814,019</u>
Change in Net Assets	\$ 782,766	\$ 1,318,100	\$ 2,598,006	\$ 2,626,874	\$ 6,539,020
Beginning Net Assets	\$ 16,241,894	\$ 15,717,908	\$ 17,036,008	\$ 12,589,888	\$ 15,216,762
Prior Period Adjustment	\$ (1,306,752) ⁽²⁾	\$ -	\$ (7,044,126) ⁽³⁾	\$ -	\$ -
Ending Net Assets	<u>\$ 15,717,908</u>	<u>\$ 17,036,008</u>	<u>\$ 12,589,888</u>	<u>\$ 15,216,762</u>	<u>\$ 21,755,782</u>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34, which the District adopted for the 2002 fiscal year.

(2) In 2013 the District implemented GASB Statement Numbers 63 and 65, which reclassified bond issuance costs.

(3) In 2015 the District implemented GASB Statement Numbers 68 and 71, which relates to accounting for pensions.

APPENDIX B

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT
AND ITS ECONOMY**

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

General and Economic Information

Waxahachie Independent School District is an industrial area that includes the City of Waxahachie, Texas. Waxahachie is located 30 miles south of Dallas, Texas, 40 miles southeast of Fort Worth, Texas and 65 miles north of Waco, Texas on Interstate Highway 35E and U.S. Highway 287. The current estimated population of the District is 54,181.

Ellis County, Texas is a central Texas county with an economy based on industrial manufacturing and distribution. The county seat and principal commercial center is Waxahachie. The central Texas county was named after the president of the Convention of 1836, Richard Ellis. The current estimated population of the county is 169,602.

Source: Texas Municipal Report for Waxahachie ISD and Ellis County.

Enrollment Statistics

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2005	5,968
2006	6,215
2007	6,311
2008	6,541
2009	6,646
2010	6,924
2011	7,385
2012	7,516
2013	7,651
2014	7,814
2015	7,997
2016	8,129
2017	8,412
Current	8,501

District Staff

Teachers	597.5
Auxiliary Personnel	291
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	218.5
Administrators	48
Other Professional Staff	111
Total	1,266

Facilities

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Current Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
Turner Pre-K Academy	PK	204	300	1970	1973, 1982, 1985, 1988, 1995, 1999, 2002, 2004, 2005, 2014, 2016
Marvin Elementary	K-5	379	600	2002	2014
Clift Elementary	K-5	383	650	2008	2011
Dunaway Elementary	K-5	575	650	1987	1988
Felty Elementary	K-5	663	650	2008	N/A
Northside Elementary	K-5	468	600	1952	1962, 1973, 1986, 1995
Shackleford Elementary	K-5	599	650	1988	1998
Wedgeworth Elementary	K-5	696	800	1999	N/A
Finley Junior High School	6-8	1,011	1,050	1985	2011, 2017
Howard Junior High School	6-8	1,004	950	2008	2011
Waxahachie Ninth Grade Academy	9	*	800	2002	2004
Waxahachie Global High	9-12	361	400	1917	1990, 2006, 2007
Waxahachie High School of Choice (Turner)	9-12	16	196	1952	N/A
Waxahachie Challenge Academy (Turner)	K-12	*	100	1970	1973, 1982, 1985, 1988, 1995, 1999, 2002, 2004, 2005
Waxahachie High School	10-12	2,142	1,450	1970	N/A

*Enrollment and capacity count combined with High School and other Schools.

**Principal Employers within the District
(Employers with 250-1,000 Employees)**

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>
Dart Container Corp.	Insulated Foam Cups
Owens-Corning Fiberglass	Insulation
Waxahachie ISD	Public Schools
Walgreen Company	Distribution Center
Baylor Medical Center	Hospital
City of Waxahachie	Local Government
Magnablend	Chemical Blending

Unemployment Rates

	<u>July 2016</u>	<u>July 2017</u>	<u>July 2018</u>
Ellis County	4.2%	3.7%	3.5%
State of Texas	5.1%	4.5%	4.0%

Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

APPENDIX C

FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

Proposed Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel

An opinion in substantially the following form will be delivered by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, upon the delivery of the Bonds, assuming no material changes in facts or law.

**WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

IN THE AGGREGATE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF \$21,250,000

AS BOND COUNSEL for the Waxahachie Independent School District (the "Issuer"), the issuer of the Bonds described above (the "Bonds"), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which bear interest from the date specified in the text of the Bonds, at the rates and payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, maturing, unless redeemed prior to maturity in accordance with the terms of the Bonds, all in accordance with the terms and conditions stated in the text of the Bonds.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent provisions of the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and a transcript of certified proceedings of the Issuer, and other pertinent instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds, including executed Bond Number T-1.

BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been authorized and issued and the Bonds delivered concurrently with this opinion have been duly delivered and that, assuming due authentication, Bonds issued in exchange therefore will have been duly delivered, in accordance with law, and that the Bonds, except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer relating to bankruptcy, reorganization and other similar matters affecting creditors' rights generally, and by governmental immunity and general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion, constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer, and ad valorem taxes sufficient to provide for the payment of the interest on and principal of the Bonds have been levied and pledged for such purpose, without limit as to rate or amount.

IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual or corporate alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code").



IN EXPRESSING THE AFOREMENTIONED OPINIONS, we have relied on and assume continuing compliance with, certain representations contained in the federal tax certificate of the Issuer and covenants set forth in the order adopted by the Issuer to authorize the issuance of the Bonds, relating to, among other matters, the use of the project and the investment and expenditure of the proceeds and certain other amounts used to pay or to secure the payment of debt service on the Bonds. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or if the Issuer fails to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

EXCEPT AS STATED ABOVE, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning, or disposing of the Bonds. We express no opinion as to any insurance policies issued with respect to the payments due for the principal of and interest on the Bonds, nor as to any such insurance policies issued in the future.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service"); rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the Issuer as the taxpayer. We observe that the Issuer has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the Issuer, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the Issuer for the sole purpose of rendering our opinions with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer, or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds, and have not assumed any



responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the Issuer as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and assessed valuation of taxable property within the Issuer. Our role in connection with the Issuer's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

Respectfully,

APPENDIX D

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017**

**WAXAHACHIE
INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT FOR THE
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017**

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>	<u>Exhibit</u>
CERTIFICATE OF BOARD	2	
Independent Auditors' Report	3	
Management's Discussion and Analysis	5	
<u>Basic Financial Statements</u>		
Government Wide Statements:		
Statement of Net Position	15	A-1
Statement of Activities	16	B-1
Governmental Fund Financial Statements:		
Balance Sheet	18	C-1
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position	21	C-2
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances	22	C-3
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances to the Statement of Activities	24	C-4
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance-Budget and Actual-General Fund	25	C-5
Proprietary Fund Financial Statements:		
Statement of Net Position	26	D-1
Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position	27	D-2
Statement of Cash Flows	28	D-3
Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements:		
Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	29	E-1
Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Fund Net Position	30	E-2
Notes to the Financial Statements	31	
<u>Required Supplementary Information</u>		
Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability – Teacher Retirement System of Texas	54	G-1
Schedule of District Contributions – Teacher Retirement System of Texas	55	G-2
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	56	
<u>Combining Schedules</u>		
Nonmajor Governmental Funds:		
Combining Balance Sheet	58	H-1
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances	62	H-2
<u>Required TEA Schedules</u>		
Schedule of Delinquent Taxes	68	J-1
Budgetary Comparison Schedule – Child Nutrition Fund	70	J-2
Budgetary Comparison Schedule – Debt Service Fund	71	J-3
<u>Federal Awards Section</u>		
Independent Auditors' Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i>	75	
Independent Auditors' Report on Compliance for Each Major Program and on Internal Control Over Compliance Required by the Uniform Guidance	77	
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs	79	
Schedule of Status of Prior Findings	80	
Corrective Action Plan	81	
Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards	82	K-1
Notes on Accounting Policies for Federal Awards	83	

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Waxahachie Independent School District
Name of School District

Ellis
County

070-912
Co. - Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one) approved disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2017, at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 11th day of December, 2017.



Signature of Board Secretary



Signature of Board President

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF
CERTIFIED PUBLIC
ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED
PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

**HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON,
TONN & SEAY**
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977
TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

Independent Auditors' Report

To the Board of Trustees
Waxahachie Independent School District
Waxahachie, Texas

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Waxahachie Independent School District (the District), as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. This includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standard* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Waxahachie Independent School District as of August 31, 2017, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof and the respective budgetary comparison for the General Fund for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the *management's discussion and analysis* on pages 5 through 11 and the *pension schedules* on pages 54 through 56 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise Waxahachie Independent School District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the required TEA schedules listed in the table of contents are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The schedule of expenditures of federal awards is presented for purposes of additional analysis as required by the Uniform Guidance, and is also not a required part of the basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the required TEA schedules, and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, the required TEA schedules, and the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards*

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated November 27, 2017 on our consideration of Waxahachie Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and on our test of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering Waxahachie Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

November 27, 2017

**WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017
(UNAUDITED)**

As management of Waxahachie Independent School District, we offer readers of the District's financial statement this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities of the District for the year ended August 31, 2017. Please read this narrative in conjunction with the independent auditors' report on page 3, and the District's Basic Financial Statements that begin on page 15.

FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

- The assets and deferred outflows of resources of Waxahachie Independent School District exceeded its liabilities and deferred inflows of resources at the close of the most recent fiscal year by \$21,755,782 (net position). Of this amount, \$3,208,733 represents unrestricted net position which may be used by the District in accordance with the District's fund balance and fiscal policies.
- The District's total net position increased by \$6,539,020 during the fiscal year.
- As of the close of the current fiscal year, the District's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$89,780,254. Approximately 26% of this total amount (\$23,816,171) is unassigned and available for use within the District's fund balance policies.
- At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance for the general fund was \$23,816,171 or 33.1% of the total general fund expenditures.

OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

This discussion and analysis are intended to serve as an introduction to the District's basic financial statements. The District's basic financial statements comprise three components: 1) government-wide financial statements, 2) fund financial statements, and 3) notes to the financial statements. This report also contains other supplementary information in addition to the basic financial statements themselves. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 15 through 17). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements (starting on page 18) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. For proprietary activities, fund financial statements tell how goods or services of the District were sold to departments within the District or to external customers and how the sales revenues covered the expenses of the goods or services. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the District. The District has no component units for which it is financially accountable.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 31) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The required supplementary information provides information on the District's pension plan. The combining statements for nonmajor funds contain even more information about the District's individual funds. The sections labeled TEA Required Schedules and Federal Awards Section contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

Reporting the District as a Whole

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 15. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and deferred outflows of resources; and liabilities and deferred inflows of resources at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting (the basis used by private sector companies).

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as tuition received from students from outside the district and grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities or from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets and deferred outflows of resources are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities and deferred inflows of resources are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in it. The District's net position (the difference between assets plus deferred outflows of resources less liabilities plus deferred inflows of resources) provide one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position are one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider nonfinancial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, we divide the District into two kinds of activities:

- **Governmental activities**—Most of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.
- **Business-type activities**—The District has programs in which it charges a fee to “customers” to help it cover all or most of the cost of services it provides such as the child nutrition program, childcare fund, and an adult education program.

Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds

Fund Financial Statements

The fund financial statements begin on page 18 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds—not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the No Child Left Behind Act from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities). The District's two kinds of funds – governmental and proprietary – use different accounting approaches.

- Governmental funds—Most of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.
- Proprietary funds—The District reports the activities for which it charges users (whether outside customers or other units of the District) in proprietary funds using the same accounting methods employed in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities. In fact, the District's enterprise funds (one category of proprietary funds) are the business-type activities reported in the government-wide statements, but contain more detail and additional information, such as cash flows.

The District as Trustee

Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities and for a scholarship fund. The District's fiduciary activity is reported in a separate Statement of Fiduciary Net Position on page 29 and a Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Fund Net Position on page 30. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in this fund are used for their intended purposes.

GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

The following analysis presents both current and prior year data and discusses significant changes in the accounts. Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental and business-type activities.

Net position of the District's governmental activities increased from \$13,137,444 to \$19,681,625. Unrestricted net position of the District's governmental activities – the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements – was \$2,569,449 at August 31, 2017. The increase in governmental activities net position was primarily the result of an increase in the governmental funds fund balances.

Table I
Waxahachie Independent School District

NET POSITION

	Governmental Activities		Business-type Activities		Total	
	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017
Current and other assets	\$ 147,847,727	\$ 102,895,434	\$ 1,839,340	\$ 1,832,463	\$ 149,687,067	\$ 104,727,897
Capital assets	<u>148,773,108</u>	<u>204,013,618</u>	<u>806,306</u>	<u>755,788</u>	<u>149,579,414</u>	<u>204,769,406</u>
Total assets	296,620,835	306,909,052	2,645,646	2,588,251	299,266,481	309,497,303
Deferred outflows of resources	<u>12,896,032</u>	<u>13,748,582</u>	<u>402,810</u>	<u>230,706</u>	<u>13,298,842</u>	<u>13,979,288</u>
Total assets and deferred outflows of resources	<u>309,516,867</u>	<u>320,657,634</u>	<u>3,048,456</u>	<u>2,818,957</u>	<u>312,565,323</u>	<u>323,476,591</u>
Long-term liabilities	290,088,317	286,037,665	690,363	378,472	290,778,680	286,416,137
Other liabilities	<u>5,157,697</u>	<u>12,238,924</u>	<u>227,416</u>	<u>303,628</u>	<u>5,385,113</u>	<u>12,542,552</u>
Total liabilities	295,246,014	298,276,589	917,779	682,100	296,163,793	298,958,689
Deferred inflows of resources	<u>1,133,409</u>	<u>2,699,420</u>	<u>51,359</u>	<u>62,700</u>	<u>1,184,768</u>	<u>2,762,120</u>
Total liabilities and deferred inflows of resources	<u>296,379,423</u>	<u>300,976,009</u>	<u>969,138</u>	<u>744,800</u>	<u>297,348,561</u>	<u>301,720,809</u>
Net Position:						
Net investments in capital assets	13,700,522	14,684,196	806,306	755,788	14,506,828	15,439,984
Restricted	2,310,547	2,427,980	655,698	679,085	2,966,245	3,107,065
Unrestricted	<u>(2,873,625)</u>	<u>2,569,449</u>	<u>617,314</u>	<u>639,284</u>	<u>(2,256,311)</u>	<u>3,208,733</u>
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 13,137,444</u>	<u>\$ 19,681,625</u>	<u>\$ 2,079,318</u>	<u>\$ 2,074,157</u>	<u>\$ 15,216,762</u>	<u>\$ 21,755,782</u>

Table II
Waxahachie Independent School District

CHANGES IN NET POSITION

	Governmental Activities		Business-type Activities		Total	
	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017
Revenues:						
Program Revenues:						
Charges for services	\$ 1,354,571	\$ 2,998,913	\$ 1,636,733	\$ 1,653,932	\$ 2,991,304	\$ 4,652,845
Operating grants and contributions	9,162,215	8,780,284	2,305,703	2,420,282	11,467,918	11,200,566
General Revenues:						
Maintenance and operations taxes	36,599,043	39,431,551	-	-	36,599,043	39,431,551
Debt service taxes	12,007,723	12,931,828	-	-	12,007,723	12,931,828
State aid - formula grants	29,152,560	29,178,310	-	-	29,152,560	29,178,310
Interest earnings	383,563	796,988	-	9,145	383,563	806,133
Miscellaneous	412,098	3,151,806	-	-	412,098	3,151,806
Total Revenue	89,071,773	97,269,680	3,942,436	4,083,359	93,014,209	101,353,039
Expenses:						
Instruction, curriculum and media services	48,467,996	50,240,958	-	-	48,467,996	50,240,958
Instructional and school leadership	5,880,794	6,137,619	-	-	5,880,794	6,137,619
Student support services	5,819,819	6,159,137	-	-	5,819,819	6,159,137
Child nutrition	303,227	336,615	3,752,467	3,799,806	4,055,694	4,136,421
Extracurricular activities	3,811,130	4,160,024	-	-	3,811,130	4,160,024
General administration	2,176,809	2,306,547	-	-	2,176,809	2,306,547
Plant maintenance, security and data processing	8,677,691	9,721,767	-	-	8,677,691	9,721,767
Community services	250,107	284,591	222,977	288,714	473,084	573,305
Debt services	10,553,632	10,870,485	-	-	10,553,632	10,870,485
Facilities acquisition, construction	93,603	103,392	-	-	93,603	103,392
Other intergovernmental charges	377,083	404,364	-	-	377,083	404,364
Total Expenses	86,411,891	90,725,499	3,975,444	4,088,520	90,387,335	94,814,019
Increase (Decrease) in Net Position	2,659,882	6,544,181	(33,008)	(5,161)	2,626,874	6,539,020
Net Position - beginning of year	10,477,562	13,137,444	2,112,326	2,079,318	12,589,888	15,216,762
Net Position - end of year	\$ 13,137,444	\$ 19,681,625	\$ 2,079,318	\$ 2,074,157	\$ 15,216,762	\$ 21,755,782

Although this financial report presents relatively balanced revenues and expenditures as well as an acceptable fund balance in the General and Debt Service Funds, a number of measures were necessary to enable the District to maintain a sound financial position.

- The District's average daily attendance (ADA) increased by 257, or approximately 3.3%. Total state aid increased only \$25,750 because of increases in local tax collections.
- The District's General Fund expenditures increased 4.0% due primarily to increases in personnel costs due to increased positions required by higher enrollment and salary increases and increases in other operating expenses.
- The District's maintenance and operations (M&O) tax rate remained \$1.17 per \$100 valuation. The District's debt service tax rate remained \$0.3839 per \$100 valuation. The District's taxable property valuation increased 8.4 percent.

The cost of all governmental activities for the current fiscal year was \$90,725,499. However, as shown in the Statement of Activities on pages 16 and 17, the amount that our taxpayers ultimately financed for these activities through District taxes was \$52,363,379 because some of the costs were paid by those who directly benefited from the programs (\$2,998,913) or by other governments and organizations that subsidized certain programs with grants and contributions (\$8,780,284) or by State equalization funding (\$29,178,310).

THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As of the end of the current fiscal year, the District's governmental funds (as presented in the balance sheet on page 18) reported a combined fund balance of \$89,780,254, which is \$52,268,958 less than last year's total of \$142,049,212. Included in this year's total change in fund balance is an increase of \$6,395,254 in the General Fund, a \$65,259 increase in the Debt Service Fund and a \$58,730,288 decrease in the Capital Projects Fund.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget several times. These budget amendments fall into three categories. The first category includes amendments and supplemental appropriations that were approved shortly after the beginning of the year and reflect the actual beginning balances (versus the amounts we estimated in August 2016). The second category includes changes that the Board made during the year to reflect new information regarding revenue sources and expenditure needs. These included increases in personnel costs and maintenance costs throughout the year. The third category involves amendments moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs.

The District's General Fund balance of \$28,321,743 reported on pages 18 and 22 differs from the General Fund's budgetary fund balance of \$23,932,826 reported in the budgetary comparison schedule on page 25. This is principally due to cost savings achieved during the year and actual revenue in excess of budgeted amounts.

CAPITAL ASSETS AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

Capital Assets

At August 31, 2017, the District's governmental activities had \$204,013,618 invested in a broad range of capital assets, including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance. This amount represents a net increase of \$55,240,510 from the prior year. This increase includes the costs incurred in building a new high school that was in construction in progress at August 31, 2017.

More detailed information about the District's capital assets is presented in Note 4 to the financial statements.

Debt Administration

At year-end, the District had \$269,743,360 in bonds payable outstanding (including accreted interest on capital appreciation bonds) versus \$274,853,362 last year—a decrease of \$5,110,002. The District's general obligation bond rating is AAA (as a result of guarantees of the Texas Permanent School Fund) according to national rating agencies.

More detailed information about the District's long-term liabilities is presented in Note 5 to the financial statements.

ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES

- Total state aid is expected to decrease 1.5% due to higher local tax collections offset by higher revenue due to higher enrollment.
- The District's General Fund expenditures are budgeted to increase approximately 7.8% due to higher personnel cost from salary increases and new positions added to accommodate enrollment growth and increased capital outlay in the General Fund.
- The District's 2017 maintenance and operating tax rate remained \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable property value. The 2017 adopted debt service tax rate remained \$0.3839 per \$100 valuation.
- The District's 2017-2018 General Fund budget has budgeted revenues equal to budgeted expenditures (\$77.4 million).

CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office at Waxahachie Independent School District, 411 N. Gibson Street, Waxahachie, Texas 75165, (972) 923-4631.

This page left blank intentionally.

BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

This page left blank intentionally.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT A-1

Data Control Codes	1	2 Primary Government	3
	Governmental Activities	Business Type Activities	Total
ASSETS			
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 94,823,750	\$ 1,665,801	\$ 96,489,551
1220 Property Taxes Receivable (Delinquent)	1,209,081	-	1,209,081
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(24,181)	-	(24,181)
1240 Due from Other Governments	5,250,500	99,517	5,350,017
1250 Accrued Interest	32,894	-	32,894
1260 Internal Balances	372	(372)	-
1290 Other Receivables, net	107,446	-	107,446
1300 Inventories	-	66,429	66,429
1410 Prepayments	505,572	1,088	506,660
Capital Assets:			
1510 Land	12,923,069	-	12,923,069
1520 Buildings, Net	122,014,452	-	122,014,452
1530 Furniture and Equipment, Net	5,260,697	755,788	6,016,485
1580 Construction in Progress	63,815,400	-	63,815,400
1800 Restricted Assets	990,000	-	990,000
1000 Total Assets	<u>306,909,052</u>	<u>2,588,251</u>	<u>309,497,303</u>
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
1701 Deferred Charge on Bond Refundings	3,816,021	-	3,816,021
1705 Deferred Outflows Related to TRS	9,932,561	230,706	10,163,267
1700 Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>13,748,582</u>	<u>230,706</u>	<u>13,979,288</u>
LIABILITIES			
2110 Accounts Payable	8,571,038	118,693	8,689,731
2140 Accrued Interest Payable	308,643	-	308,643
2150 Payroll Deductions & Withholdings	11,405	-	11,405
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	3,276,728	104,636	3,381,364
2300 Unearned Revenue	71,109	80,299	151,408
Noncurrent Liabilities			
2501 Due Within One Year	6,825,798	-	6,825,798
2502 Due in More Than One Year	262,917,562	-	262,917,562
2540 Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	16,294,306	378,472	16,672,778
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>298,276,589</u>	<u>682,100</u>	<u>298,958,689</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
2605 Deferred Inflows Related to TRS	2,699,420	62,700	2,762,120
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>2,699,420</u>	<u>62,700</u>	<u>2,762,120</u>
NET POSITION			
3200 Net Investment in Capital Assets	14,684,196	755,788	15,439,984
Restricted:			
3820 Restricted for Federal and State Programs	15,007	679,085	694,092
3850 Restricted for Debt Service	2,412,973	-	2,412,973
3900 Unrestricted	2,569,449	639,284	3,208,733
3000 Total Net Position	<u>\$ 19,681,625</u>	<u>\$ 2,074,157</u>	<u>\$ 21,755,782</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	1	Program Revenues	
		3	4
	Expenses	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions
Primary Government:			
GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:			
11 Instruction	\$ 48,216,231	\$ 2,316,123	\$ 4,876,040
12 Instructional Resources and Media Services	1,123,186	42,742	58,878
13 Curriculum and Staff Development	901,541	1,032	167,745
21 Instructional Leadership	1,512,570	-	216,665
23 School Leadership	4,625,049	-	284,512
31 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	2,958,827	-	1,111,291
33 Health Services	976,806	-	61,473
34 Student (Pupil) Transportation	2,223,504	46	713,173
35 Food Services	336,615	-	8,644
36 Extracurricular Activities	4,160,024	369,181	127,551
41 General Administration	2,306,547	212	186,218
51 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	6,672,024	269,577	239,590
52 Security and Monitoring Services	939,027	-	60,143
53 Data Processing Services	2,110,716	-	54,900
61 Community Services	284,591	-	19,911
72 Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt	10,865,185	-	593,550
73 Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	5,300	-	-
81 Capital Outlay	103,392	-	-
99 Other Intergovernmental Charges	404,364	-	-
[TG] Total Governmental Activities:	90,725,499	2,998,913	8,780,284
BUSINESS-TYPE ACTIVITIES:			
35 Enterprise Fund - National School Breakfast&Lunch	3,799,806	1,347,148	2,420,282
01 Childcare Fund	271,942	285,782	-
02 Lighthouse for Learning	16,772	21,002	-
[TB] Total Business-Type Activities:	4,088,520	1,653,932	2,420,282
[TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:	\$ 94,814,019	\$ 4,652,845	\$ 11,200,566

Data Control Codes	General Revenues:
	Taxes:
MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants
IE	Investment Earnings
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue
TR	Total General Revenues
CN	Change in Net Position
NB	Net Position - Beginning
NE	Net Position--Ending

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position		
6	7	8
	Primary Government	
Governmental Activities	Business-type Activities	Total
\$ (41,024,068)	\$ -	\$ (41,024,068)
(1,021,566)	-	(1,021,566)
(732,764)	-	(732,764)
(1,295,905)	-	(1,295,905)
(4,340,537)	-	(4,340,537)
(1,847,536)	-	(1,847,536)
(915,333)	-	(915,333)
(1,510,285)	-	(1,510,285)
(327,971)	-	(327,971)
(3,663,292)	-	(3,663,292)
(2,120,117)	-	(2,120,117)
(6,162,857)	-	(6,162,857)
(878,884)	-	(878,884)
(2,055,816)	-	(2,055,816)
(264,680)	-	(264,680)
(10,271,635)	-	(10,271,635)
(5,300)	-	(5,300)
(103,392)	-	(103,392)
(404,364)	-	(404,364)
<u>(78,946,302)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(78,946,302)</u>
-	(32,376)	(32,376)
-	13,840	13,840
-	4,230	4,230
<u>-</u>	<u>(14,306)</u>	<u>(14,306)</u>
<u>(78,946,302)</u>	<u>(14,306)</u>	<u>(78,960,608)</u>
39,431,551	-	39,431,551
12,931,828	-	12,931,828
29,178,310	-	29,178,310
796,988	9,145	806,133
3,151,806	-	3,151,806
<u>85,490,483</u>	<u>9,145</u>	<u>85,499,628</u>
6,544,181	(5,161)	6,539,020
13,137,444	2,079,318	15,216,762
<u>\$ 19,681,625</u>	<u>\$ 2,074,157</u>	<u>\$ 21,755,782</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
BALANCE SHEET
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Capital Projects
ASSETS			
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 27,614,864	\$ 1,424,073	\$ 65,941,078
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	926,100	282,981	-
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes (Credit)	(18,522)	(5,659)	-
1240 Receivables from Other Governments	3,979,655	30,221	-
1250 Accrued Interest	29,287	-	3,607
1260 Due from Other Funds	526	-	-
1290 Other Receivables	107,446	-	-
1410 Prepayments	505,572	-	-
1800 Restricted Assets	-	990,000	-
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 33,144,928</u>	<u>\$ 2,721,616</u>	<u>\$ 65,944,685</u>
LIABILITIES			
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ 727,312	\$ -	\$ 7,361,318
2150 Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable	11,405	-	-
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	3,105,781	-	-
2170 Due to Other Funds	-	-	-
2300 Unearned Revenues	71,109	-	-
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>3,915,607</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>7,361,318</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	907,578	277,322	-
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>907,578</u>	<u>277,322</u>	<u>-</u>
FUND BALANCES			
Nonspendable Fund Balance:			
3430 Prepaid Items	505,572	-	-
Restricted Fund Balance:			
3450 Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-
3470 Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation	-	-	58,583,367
3480 Retirement of Long-Term Debt	-	2,444,294	-
Committed Fund Balance:			
3510 Construction	4,000,000	-	-
3545 Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	23,816,171	-	-
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>28,321,743</u>	<u>2,444,294</u>	<u>58,583,367</u>
4000 Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances	<u>\$ 33,144,928</u>	<u>\$ 2,721,616</u>	<u>\$ 65,944,685</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$ (156,265)	\$ 94,823,750
-	1,209,081
-	(24,181)
1,240,624	5,250,500
-	32,894
-	526
-	107,446
-	505,572
-	990,000
<u>\$ 1,084,359</u>	<u>\$ 102,895,588</u>
\$ 482,408	\$ 8,571,038
-	11,405
170,947	3,276,728
154	154
-	71,109
<u>653,509</u>	<u>11,930,434</u>
-	1,184,900
<u>-</u>	<u>1,184,900</u>
-	505,572
15,007	15,007
-	58,583,367
-	2,444,294
-	4,000,000
415,843	415,843
-	23,816,171
<u>430,850</u>	<u>89,780,254</u>
<u>\$ 1,084,359</u>	<u>\$ 102,895,588</u>

This page left blank intentionally.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT C-2

Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds	\$	89,780,254
1 Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and, therefore, are not reported in fund financial statements.		293,899,951
2 Accumulated depreciation is not reported in the fund financial statements.		(89,886,333)
3 Bonds payable are not reported in the fund financial statements.		(228,173,180)
4 Accreted interest payable on capital appreciation bonds is not reported in the fund financial statements.		(26,197,272)
5 Bond premiums are not recognized in the fund financial statements.		(15,372,908)
6 Property tax revenue reported as unavailable revenue in the fund financial statements is recognized as revenue in the government-wide financial statements.		1,184,900
7 Interest on outstanding debt is accrued in the government-wide financial statements, whereas in the fund financial statements interest expenditures are reported when due.		(308,643)
8 Deferred charge on bond refundings is not recognized in the fund financial statements.		3,816,021
9 Included in the items related to government-wide long-term debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68 and 71 in the amount of \$16,294,306, Deferred Inflows of Resources related to TRS in the amount of \$2,699,420, and Deferred Outflows of Resources related to TRS in the amount of \$9,932,561. This results in a net decrease in Net Position in the amount of \$9,061,165.		(9,061,165)
19 Net Position of Governmental Activities	\$	19,681,625

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Capital Projects
REVENUES:			
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 40,408,641	\$ 12,923,811	\$ 537,856
5800 State Program Revenues	33,109,628	489,976	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	1,815,447	103,574	-
5020 Total Revenues	<u>75,333,716</u>	<u>13,517,361</u>	<u>537,856</u>
EXPENDITURES:			
Current:			
0011 Instruction	40,829,313	-	-
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	960,891	-	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	750,526	-	-
0021 Instructional Leadership	1,332,131	-	-
0023 School Leadership	4,320,013	-	-
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	1,913,998	-	-
0033 Health Services	943,186	-	-
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	2,170,216	-	-
0035 Food Services	14,274	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	3,071,981	-	9,527
0041 General Administration	2,228,011	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	6,666,027	-	-
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	901,707	-	-
0053 Data Processing Services	1,729,142	-	-
0061 Community Services	265,891	-	-
Debt Service:			
0071 Principal on Long Term Debt	275,000	2,297,513	-
0072 Interest on Long Term Debt	2,060,729	11,149,289	-
0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	5,300	-
Capital Outlay:			
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	999,766	-	59,258,617
Intergovernmental:			
0099 Other Intergovernmental Charges	404,364	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>71,837,166</u>	<u>13,452,102</u>	<u>59,268,144</u>
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	3,496,550	65,259	(58,730,288)
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):			
7912 Sale of Real and Personal Property	2,898,704	-	-
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	<u>6,395,254</u>	<u>65,259</u>	<u>(58,730,288)</u>
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>21,926,489</u>	<u>2,379,035</u>	<u>117,313,655</u>
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 28,321,743</u>	<u>\$ 2,444,294</u>	<u>\$ 58,583,367</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$	570,984	\$ 54,441,292
	814,809	34,414,413
	2,823,948	4,742,969
	4,209,741	93,598,674
	2,796,156	43,625,469
	42,767	1,003,658
	129,575	880,101
	136,714	1,468,845
	-	4,320,013
	964,609	2,878,607
	-	943,186
	46	2,170,262
	8,644	22,918
	129,445	3,210,953
	212	2,228,223
	608	6,666,635
	-	901,707
	-	1,729,142
	148	266,039
	-	2,572,513
	-	13,210,018
	-	5,300
	-	60,258,383
	-	404,364
	4,208,924	148,766,336
	817	(55,167,662)
	-	2,898,704
	817	(52,268,958)
	430,033	142,049,212
\$	430,850	\$ 89,780,254

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds	\$	(52,268,958)
Current year capital asset additions are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they are shown as increases in capital assets in the government-wide financial statements. The effect of reclassifying the current year capital asset additions is to increase net position.		60,858,443
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position in the government-wide financial statements.		(5,617,933)
Current year long-term debt principal payments on bonds payable and payments of accreted interest on capital appreciation bonds are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but are shown as reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		6,564,098
Current year interest accretion on capital appreciation bonds is not reflected in the fund financial statements, but is shown as an increase in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		(2,184,489)
Interest expense on outstanding debt is accrued in the government-wide financial statements, whereas in the fund financial statements interest expenditures are reported when due.		(1,855)
Revenues from property taxes are reported as unavailable revenue in the fund financial statements until they are considered available to finance current expenditures, but such revenues are recognized when assessed, net of an allowance for uncollectible amounts, in the government-wide financial statements.		237,294
Current year amortization of the premiums on bonds payable is not recognized in the fund financial statements, but is shown as a reduction of long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		730,393
Current year amortization of deferred charge on bond refundings is not reflected in the fund financial statements, but is shown as a reduction of the deferred charge in the government-wide financial statements.		(190,801)
The implementation of GASB 68 required that certain expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. TRS contributions made after the measurement date of 8/31/2016 caused the change in the ending net position to increase by \$99,423. These contributions were replaced with the District's pension expense for the year of \$1,681,434, which caused a decrease in the change in net position. The net effect of all of these is to decrease the change in net position by \$1,582,011.		(1,582,011)
Change in Net Assets of Governmental Activities	\$	6,544,181

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 39,842,820	\$ 40,170,130	\$ 40,408,641	\$ 238,511
5800	State Program Revenues	30,992,000	31,430,911	33,109,628	1,678,717
5900	Federal Program Revenues	1,050,000	1,293,346	1,815,447	522,101
5020	Total Revenues	71,884,820	72,894,387	75,333,716	2,439,329
EXPENDITURES:					
Current:					
0011	Instruction	40,894,320	41,200,411	40,829,313	371,098
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	980,031	960,492	960,891	(399)
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	670,515	767,933	750,526	17,407
0021	Instructional Leadership	1,372,257	1,344,435	1,332,131	12,304
0023	School Leadership	4,280,317	4,334,744	4,320,013	14,731
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	1,806,522	1,917,352	1,913,998	3,354
0033	Health Services	930,723	944,326	943,186	1,140
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	2,072,833	2,211,987	2,170,216	41,771
0035	Food Services	-	14,275	14,274	1
0036	Extracurricular Activities	3,091,170	3,140,754	3,071,981	68,773
0041	General Administration	2,226,254	2,269,253	2,228,011	41,242
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	6,844,016	6,784,324	6,666,027	118,297
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	889,763	988,456	901,707	86,749
0053	Data Processing Services	1,458,583	1,796,756	1,729,142	67,614
0061	Community Services	205,149	272,230	265,891	6,339
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long Term Debt	3,200,000	440,699	275,000	165,699
0072	Interest on Long Term Debt	-	2,759,301	2,060,729	698,572
Capital Outlay:					
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	565,000	1,234,452	999,766	234,686
Intergovernmental:					
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	397,367	404,364	404,364	-
6030	Total Expenditures	71,884,820	73,786,544	71,837,166	1,949,378
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	(892,157)	3,496,550	4,388,707
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):					
7912	Sale of Real and Personal Property	-	2,898,494	2,898,704	210
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	2,006,337	6,395,254	4,388,917
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	21,926,489	21,926,489	21,926,489	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 21,926,489	\$ 23,932,826	\$ 28,321,743	\$ 4,388,917

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
PROPRIETARY FUNDS
AUGUST 31, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds		
	Child Nutrition Program	Nonmajor Enterprise Funds	Total Enterprise Funds
ASSETS			
Current Assets:			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,005,275	\$ 660,526	\$ 1,665,801
Due from Other Governments	99,517	-	99,517
Inventories	66,429	-	66,429
Prepayments	-	1,088	1,088
Total Current Assets	<u>1,171,221</u>	<u>661,614</u>	<u>1,832,835</u>
Noncurrent Assets:			
Capital Assets:			
Furniture and Equipment	1,589,203	7,499	1,596,702
Depreciation on Furniture and Equipment	(836,414)	(4,500)	(840,914)
Total Noncurrent Assets	<u>752,789</u>	<u>2,999</u>	<u>755,788</u>
Total Assets	<u>1,924,010</u>	<u>664,613</u>	<u>2,588,623</u>
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
Deferred Outflow Related to TRS	230,706	-	230,706
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>230,706</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>230,706</u>
LIABILITIES			
Current Liabilities:			
Accounts Payable	118,432	261	118,693
Accrued Wages Payable	84,558	20,078	104,636
Due to Other Funds	372	-	372
Unearned Revenues	78,308	1,991	80,299
Total Current Liabilities	<u>281,670</u>	<u>22,330</u>	<u>304,000</u>
NonCurrent Liabilities:			
Net Pension Liability	378,472	-	378,472
Total Noncurrent Liabilities	<u>378,472</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>378,472</u>
Total Liabilities	<u>660,142</u>	<u>22,330</u>	<u>682,472</u>
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
Deferred Inflow Related to TRS	62,700	-	62,700
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>62,700</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>62,700</u>
NET POSITION			
Restricted for Child Nutrition Program	1,431,874	-	1,431,874
Unrestricted Net Position	-	642,283	642,283
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 1,431,874</u>	<u>\$ 642,283</u>	<u>\$ 2,074,157</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN FUND NET POSITION
PROPRIETARY FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			
	Child Nutrition Program	Nonmajor Enterprise Funds	Total Enterprise Funds
OPERATING REVENUES:			
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 1,281,349	\$ 296,024	\$ 1,577,373
State Program Revenues	71,544	14,160	85,704
Total Operating Revenues	<u>1,352,893</u>	<u>310,184</u>	<u>1,663,077</u>
OPERATING EXPENSES:			
Payroll Costs	1,334,993	244,799	1,579,792
Professional and Contracted Services	106,635	11,315	117,950
Supplies and Materials	2,243,674	31,154	2,274,828
Other Operating Costs	5,521	946	6,467
Depreciation Expense	108,983	500	109,483
Total Operating Expenses	<u>3,799,806</u>	<u>288,714</u>	<u>4,088,520</u>
Operating Income (Loss)	<u>(2,446,913)</u>	<u>21,470</u>	<u>(2,425,443)</u>
NONOPERATING REVENUES (EXPENSES):			
National School Breakfast Program	469,072	-	469,072
National School Lunch Program	1,692,523	-	1,692,523
Donated Commodities (USDA)	258,687	-	258,687
Total Nonoperating Revenues (Expenses)	<u>2,420,282</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>2,420,282</u>
Change in Net Position	(26,631)	21,470	(5,161)
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>1,458,505</u>	<u>620,813</u>	<u>2,079,318</u>
Total Net Position August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 1,431,874</u>	<u>\$ 642,283</u>	<u>\$ 2,074,157</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
PROPRIETARY FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT D-3

	Business-Type Activities		
	Child Nutrition Program	Nonmajor Enterprise Funds	Total Enterprise Funds
<u>Cash Flows from Operating Activities:</u>			
Cash Received from User Charges	\$ 1,293,501	\$ 296,024	\$ 1,589,525
Cash Received from State	59,127	14,160	73,287
Cash Payments to Employees for Services	(1,430,090)	(239,188)	(1,669,278)
Cash Payments for Suppliers	(2,062,063)	(43,296)	(2,105,359)
Cash Payments for Other Operating Expenses	(5,521)	(946)	(6,467)
Net Cash Provided by (Used for) Operating Activities	<u>(2,145,046)</u>	<u>26,754</u>	<u>(2,118,292)</u>
<u>Cash Flows from Non-Capital Financing Activities:</u>			
Cash Received from Federal Programs	2,146,044	-	2,146,044
<u>Cash Flows from Investing Activities:</u>			
Purchase of Capital Assets	(58,965)	-	(58,965)
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	(57,967)	26,754	(31,213)
Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year	1,063,242	633,772	1,697,014
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year	<u>\$ 1,005,275</u>	<u>\$ 660,526</u>	<u>\$ 1,665,801</u>
<u>Reconciliation of Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash</u>			
<u>Provided by (Used for) Operating Activities:</u>			
Operating Income (Loss):	\$ (2,446,913)	\$ 21,470	\$ (2,425,443)
<u>Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income to Net Cash Provided by (Used For) Operating Activities:</u>			
Depreciation	108,982	500	109,482
Non-Cash Donated Commodities	258,687	-	258,687
<u>Effect of Increases and Decreases in Current Assets and Liabilities:</u>			
Decrease (increase) in Inventories	(7,697)	-	(7,697)
Decrease (increase) in Prepayments	-	(1,088)	(1,088)
Increase (decrease) in Accounts Payable	37,256	261	37,517
Increase (decrease) in Accrued Wages Payable	20,933	5,611	26,544
Increase (decrease) in Unearned Revenues	12,152	-	12,152
Increase (decrease) in Net Pension Amounts	(128,446)	-	(128,446)
Net Cash Provided by (Used for) Operating Activities	<u>\$ (2,145,046)</u>	<u>\$ 26,754</u>	<u>\$ (2,118,292)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
FIDUCIARY FUNDS
AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT E-1

	Private Purpose Trust Fund	Agency Funds
ASSETS		
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 912,876	\$ 165,494
Total Assets	<u>912,876</u>	<u>\$ 165,494</u>
LIABILITIES		
Accounts Payable	-	\$ 12,728
Due to Student Groups	-	152,766
Total Liabilities	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ 165,494</u>
NET POSITION		
Unrestricted Net Position	<u>912,876</u>	
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 912,876</u>	

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN FIDUCIARY FUND NET POSITION
FIDUCIARY FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Private Purpose Trust Fund
ADDITIONS:	
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 25,132
Total Additions	<u>25,132</u>
DEDUCTIONS:	
Other Operating Costs	<u>24,900</u>
Total Deductions	<u>24,900</u>
Change in Net Position	232
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>912,644</u>
Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	<u><u>\$ 912,876</u></u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

NOTE 1. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Waxahachie Independent School District's (the "District") combined financial statements have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as applied to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide (FAR). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles. The more significant accounting policies of the District are described below.

A. REPORTING ENTITY

The Board of Trustees, a seven member group, has fiscal accountability over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The board of trustees is elected by the public. The trustees as a body corporate have the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the District. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency (Agency) or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the trustees, and the Agency may not substitute its judgment for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the trustees. The District is not included in any other governmental "reporting entity" as defined in Section 2100, Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards.

The District's basic financial statements include the accounts of all District operations. The criteria for including organizations as component units within the District's reporting entity, as set forth in Section 2100 of GASB's Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards, include whether:

- the organization is legally separate (can sue and be sued in their own name)
- the District holds the corporate powers of the organization
- the District appoints a voting majority of the organization's board
- the District is able to impose its will on the organization
- the organization has the potential to impose a financial benefit/burden on the District
- there is fiscal dependency by the organization on the District

Based on the aforementioned criteria, Waxahachie Independent School District has no component units.

B. BASIS OF PRESENTATION

The government-wide financial statements (the statement of net position and the statement of activities) report information on all of the nonfiduciary activities of the District. The effect of interfund activity, within the governmental and business-type activities columns, has been removed from these statements. Governmental activities, which normally are supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues, are reported separately from business-type activities, which rely, to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The statement of activities demonstrates the degree to which the direct expenses of a given program are offset by program revenues. Direct expenses are those that are clearly identifiable with a specific program. Program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided by a given program and 2) operating or capital grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Taxes and other items not properly included among program revenues are reported instead as general revenues.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Fund Financial Statements:

The District segregates transactions related to certain functions or activities in separate funds in order to aid financial management and to demonstrate legal compliance. These statements present each major fund as a separate column on the fund financial statements; all non-major funds are aggregated and presented in a single column.

Governmental funds are those funds through which most governmental functions typically are financed. The measurement focus of governmental funds is on the sources, uses and balance of current financial resources. The District has presented the following major governmental funds:

1. **General Fund** - This fund is established to account for resources financing the fundamental operations of the District, in partnership with the community, in enabling and motivating students to reach their full potential. All revenues and expenditures not required to be accounted for in other funds are included here. This is a budgeted fund and any fund balances are considered resources available for current operations. Fund balances may be appropriated by the Board of Trustees to implement its responsibilities.
2. **Debt Service Fund** - This fund is established to account for payment of principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt and other long-term debts for which a tax has been dedicated. This is a budgeted fund. Any unused debt service fund balances are transferred to the General Fund after all of the related debt obligations have been met.
3. **Capital Projects Fund** - This fund is established to account for proceeds, from the sale of bonds and other resources to be used for Board authorized acquisition, construction, or renovation, as well as, furnishings and equipping of major capital facilities. Upon completion of a project, any unused bond proceeds are transferred to the Debt Service Fund and are used to retire related bond principal.
4. **Child Nutrition Program Enterprise Fund** - The District utilizes an enterprise fund to account for the District's Child Nutrition Program. The District uses an enterprise fund because the Child Nutrition Program is self-supporting and does not require subsidies from the General Fund.

Additionally, the District reports the following fund types:

1. **Special Revenue Funds** - These funds are established to account for federally financed or expenditures legally restricted for specified purposes. In many special revenue funds, any unused balances are returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods. For funds in this fund type, project accounting is employed to maintain integrity for the various sources of funds.
2. **Nonmajor Enterprise Funds** - The District utilizes enterprise funds to account for the Districts' activities for which outside users are charged a fee roughly equal to the cost of providing the goods or services of those activities. The District accounts for a childcare center and an after-school program in nonmajor enterprise funds.
3. **Private Purpose Trust Fund** - The District accounts for donations which have the stipulation that the funds be used for a specific purpose in this fund. The District's Private Purpose Trust Fund is a scholarship fund. These funds are not budgeted.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

4. **Agency Funds** - These custodial funds are used to account for activities of student groups and other organizational activities requiring clearing accounts. Financial resources for the Agency funds are recorded as assets and liabilities; therefore, these funds do not include revenues and expenditures and have no fund equity. If any unused resources are declared surplus by the student groups, they are transferred to the General Fund with a recommendation to the Board for an appropriate utilization through a budgeted program.

The enterprise funds are proprietary fund types. Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from non-operating items. Operating revenues and expenses generally result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. Operating expenses for the proprietary fund includes the cost of personal and contractual services. All revenues and expenses not meeting this definition are reported as non-operating revenues and expenses.

C. MEASUREMENT FOCUS/BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

Measurement focus refers to what is being measured; basis of accounting refers to when revenues and expenditures are recognized in the accounts and reported in the financial statements. Basis of accounting relates to the timing of the measurement made, regardless of the measurement focus applied.

The government-wide statements and fund financial statements for proprietary funds are reported using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. The economic resources measurement focus means all assets and deferred outflows of resources; and liabilities and deferred inflows of resources (whether current or non-current) are included on the statement of net position and the operating statements present increases (revenues) and decreases (expenses) in net total position. Under the accrual basis of accounting, revenues are recognized when earned and expenses are recognized at the time the liability is incurred.

Governmental fund financial statements are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and are accounted for using the modified accrual basis of accounting. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, revenues are recognized when susceptible to accrual; i.e., when they become both measurable and available. "Measurable" means the amount of the transaction can be determined and "available" means collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period. The District considers property taxes as available if they are collected within 60 days after year-end. A one-year availability period is used for recognition of all other Governmental Fund revenues. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred. However, debt service expenditures, as well as expenditures related to compensated absences are recorded only when payment is due.

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

The revenues susceptible to accrual are property taxes, charges for services, interest income and intergovernmental revenues. All other Governmental Fund Type revenues are recognized when received.

Revenues from state and federal grants are recognized as earned when the related program expenditures are incurred. Funds received but unearned are reflected as deferred revenues, and funds expended but not yet received are shown as receivables.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Revenue from investments, including governmental external investment pool, is based upon fair value. Fair value is the amount at which a financial instrument could be exchanged in a current transaction between willing parties, other than in a forced or liquidation sale. Most investments are reported at amortized cost when the investments have remaining maturities of one year or less at time of purchase. External investment pool are permitted to report short-term debt investments at amortized cost, provided that the fair value of those investments is not significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer, or other factors. For that purpose, a pool's short-term investments are those with remaining maturities of up to ninety days.

In accordance with the FAR, the District has adopted and installed an accounting system which exceeds the minimum requirements prescribed by the State Board of Education and approved by the State Auditor. Specifically, the District's accounting system uses codes and the code structure presented in the Accounting Code Section of the FAR.

D. BUDGETARY CONTROL

Formal budgetary accounting is employed for all required Governmental Fund Types, as outlined in TEA's FAR module, and is presented on the modified accrual basis of accounting consistent with generally accepted accounting principles. The budget is prepared and controlled at the function level within each organization to which responsibility for controlling operations is assigned.

The official school budget is prepared for adoption for required Governmental Fund Types prior to August 20 of the preceding fiscal year for the subsequent fiscal year beginning September 1. The budget is formally adopted by the Board of Trustees at a public meeting held at least ten days after public notice has been given. The budget is prepared by fund, function, object, and organization. The budget is controlled at the organizational level by the appropriate department head or campus principal within Board allocations. Therefore, organizations may transfer appropriations as necessary without the approval of the board unless the intent is to cross fund, function or increase the overall budget allocations. Control of appropriations by the Board of Trustees is maintained within Fund Groups at the function code level and revenue object code level.

Annual budgets are adopted on a basis consistent with generally accepted accounting principles for the General Fund, the Debt Service Fund and the Food Service Enterprise Fund. Special revenue funds and the Capital Projects Fund adopt project-length budgets which do not correspond to the District's fiscal year. Each annual budget is presented on the modified accrual basis of accounting. The budget is amended throughout the year by the Board of Trustees. Such amendments are reflected in the official minutes of the Board.

A reconciliation of fund balances for both appropriated budget and nonappropriated budget special revenue funds is as follows:

August 31, 2017	
<u>Fund Balance</u>	
Appropriated Budget Funds	\$ -
Nonappropriated Budget Funds	<u>430,850</u>
All Special Revenue Funds	<u>\$430,850</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

E. ENCUMBRANCE ACCOUNTING

The District employs encumbrance accounting, whereby encumbrances for goods or purchased services are documented by purchase orders and contracts. An encumbrance represents a commitment of Board appropriation related to unperformed contracts for goods and services. The issuance of a purchase order or the signing of a contract creates an encumbrance but does not represent an expenditure for the period, only a commitment to expend resources. Appropriations lapse at August 31 and encumbrances outstanding at that time are either canceled or appropriately provided for in the subsequent year's budget. There were no material outstanding encumbrances at August 31, 2017.

F. INVENTORIES

The District records purchases of supplies as expenditures in the Governmental Funds. In the proprietary fund-types, the consumption method is used to account for inventories of food and other supplies. Under this method, these items are carried in an inventory account for the respective fund at cost, using the first-in, first-out method of accounting and are subsequently charged to expenditures when consumed.

G. INTERFUND RECEIVABLES AND PAYABLES

Short-term amounts owed between funds are classified as "Due to/from other funds". Interfund loans are classified as "Due to/from other funds".

H. PREPAYMENTS

Prepayments represent payments made by the District in the current year to provide services occurring in the subsequent fiscal year.

I. CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital assets, which includes property, plant, equipment, and infrastructure assets, are reported in the applicable governmental activities columns in the government-wide financial statements. All capital assets are valued at historical cost or estimated historical cost if actual historical cost is not available. Donated assets are valued at their fair market value on the date donated. Repairs and maintenance are recorded as expenses. Renewals and betterments are capitalized. Interest has not been capitalized during the construction period on property, plant and equipment.

Assets capitalized have an original cost of \$5,000 or more and over one-year of useful life. Depreciation has been calculated on each class of depreciable property using the straight-line method. Estimated useful lives are as follows:

Buildings	50 Years
Furniture and Equipment	3-15 Years

J. COMPENSATED ABSENCES

It is the District's policy to permit employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation and sick pay benefits. There is no liability for unpaid accumulated sick leave since the District does not have a policy to pay any amounts when employees separate from service with the District. All vacation pay is accrued when incurred in the government-wide, proprietary, and fiduciary fund financial statements. A liability for these amounts is reported in governmental funds only if they have matured, for example, as a result of employee resignations and retirements.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

K. CASH EQUIVALENTS

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, investments are considered to be cash equivalents if they are highly liquid with maturity within three months or less.

L. NET POSITION

Net position represents the difference between assets and deferred outflows of resources; and liabilities and deferred inflows of resources. Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation, reduced by the outstanding balances of any borrowing used for the acquisition, construction or improvements of those assets, and adding back unspent proceeds. Net position is reported as restricted when there are limitations imposed on its use either through the enabling legislation's adopted by the District or through external restrictions imposed by creditors, grantors or laws or regulations of other governments. Unrestricted net position is available for the general use of the District.

When both restricted and unrestricted net position is available, restricted net position is expended before unrestricted net position if such use is consistent with the restricted purpose.

M. LONG-TERM OBLIGATIONS

In the government-wide financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities statement of net position. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Bond issuance costs are expensed as incurred.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

N. RISK MANAGEMENT

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts theft of, damage to and destruction of assets; errors and omissions; injuries to employees; and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2017, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year, and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

O. ESTIMATES

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect certain reported amounts and disclosures. Accordingly, actual results could differ from those estimates.

NOTE 2. FUND BALANCES

The District has implemented GASB Statement No. 54, "Fund Balance Reporting and Governmental Fund Type Definitions." This Statement provides more clearly defined fund balance categories to make the nature and extent of the constraints placed on a government's fund balances more transparent.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Fund Balance Classification: The governmental fund financial statements present fund balances based on classifications that comprise a hierarchy that is based primarily on the extent to which the District is bound to honor constraints on the specific purposes for which amounts in the respective governmental funds can be spent. The classifications used in the governmental fund financial statements are as follows:

- Nonspendable: This classification includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either (a) not in spendable form or (b) are legally or contractually required to be maintained intact. The District has classified prepaid items as being nonspendable as these items are not expected to be converted to cash.
- Restricted: This classification includes amounts for which constraints have been placed on the use of the resources either (a) externally imposed by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments, or (b) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation. Debt service resources are to be used for future servicing of the District's bonded debt and are restricted through debt covenants. Capital projects resources are restricted for future capital outlay. State grant resources are restricted because their use is restricted pursuant to the grant requirements.
- Committed: This classification includes amounts that can be used only for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the District's Board of Trustees. The Board of Trustees establishes (and modifies or rescinds) fund balance commitments by passage of a resolution. This can also be done through adoption and amendment of the budget. These amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board removes or changes the specified use by taking the same type of action that was employed when the funds were initially committed. This classification also includes contractual obligations to the extent that existing resources have been specifically committed for use in satisfying those contractual requirements. The Board of Trustees have committed resources as of August 31, 2017 for campus activities and for future construction.
- Assigned: This classification includes amounts that are constrained by the District's intent to be used for a specific purpose but are neither restricted nor committed. This intent can be expressed by the Board of Trustees or through the Board of Trustees delegating this responsibility to other individuals in the District. Under the District's adopted policy, only the Board of Trustees may assign amounts for specific purposes. This classification also includes the remaining positive fund balance for all governmental funds except for the General Fund. The District has not assigned any fund balance of the General Fund as of August 31, 2017.
- Unassigned: This classification includes all amounts not included in other spendable classifications, including the residual fund balance of the General Fund.

When an expenditure is incurred for purposes for which both restricted and unrestricted fund balance is available, the District considers restricted funds to have been spent first. When an expenditure is incurred for which committed, assigned, or unassigned fund balances are available, the District considers amounts to have been spent first out of committed funds, then assigned funds, and finally unassigned funds, as needed, unless the Board of Trustees has provided otherwise in its commitment or assignment actions.

The details of the fund balances are included in the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet (page 18) and are described below:

General Fund

The General Fund has nonspendable fund balance of \$505,572, consisting of prepaid items. The General Fund has \$4,000,000 committed for future construction projects. The General Fund has unassigned fund balance of \$23,816,171 at August 31, 2017.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Debt Service Fund

The Debt Service Fund has restricted funds of \$2,444,294 at August 31, 2017 consisting primarily of property tax collections that are restricted for debt service payments on bonded debt.

Capital Projects Fund

The Capital Projects Fund has restricted funds of \$58,583,367 at August 31, 2017 consisting primarily of remaining bond issuance proceeds that are restricted for construction and other capital outlay expenditures.

Other Funds

The fund balance of \$415,843 of the Campus Activity Funds (a special revenue fund) is shown as committed due to Board policy committing those funds to campus activities. The following special revenue funds fund balances are restricted by State grant restrictions:

Advanced Placement Incentives	\$ 5,125
State Textbook Fund	6,133
Other State Grants	<u>3,749</u>
Total	<u>\$15,007</u>

NOTE 3. DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust, with the District's agent bank, an irrevocable letter of credit in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of the irrevocable letter of credit is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

1. Cash Deposits:

At August 31, 2017, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (checking accounts, interest-bearing demand accounts, and certificates of deposit) was \$36,732,554 and the bank balance was \$37,860,735. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2017 were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by an irrevocable letter of credit from the depository bank held by the District's agent in the District's name.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

2. Investments:

The Public Funds Investment Act (Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires the District to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, (9) and bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit. Statutes authorize the District to invest in (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, certain U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas; (2) certificates of deposit, (3) certain municipal securities, (4) money market savings accounts, (5) repurchase agreements, (6) bankers acceptances, (7) Mutual Funds, (8) Investment pools, (9) guaranteed investment contracts, (10) and common trust funds. The Act also requires the District to have independent auditors perform test procedures related to investment practices as provided by the Act. The District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies.

In compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act, the District has adopted a deposit and investment policy. That policy addresses the following risks:

- a. Custodial Credit Risk – Deposits: In the case of deposits, this is the risk that, in the event of a bank failure, the District’s deposits may not be returned to it. As of August 31, 2017, the District’s cash deposits totaled \$37,860,735. This entire amount was either collateralized by securities pledged to the District by its depository bank and held by the District’s agent or covered by FDIC insurance. Thus, the District’s deposits are not exposed to custodial credit risk. The District’s deposits were fully collateralized in this way throughout the year ended August 31, 2017.
- b. Custodial Credit Risk - Investments: For an investment, this is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the District will not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. At August 31, 2017, the District held investments in two public funds investment pools and certificates of deposit with the District’s depository bank and other banks. Investments in external investment pools are considered unclassified as to custodial credit risk because they are not evidenced by securities that exist in physical or book entry form. The certificates of deposit are either covered by the depository bank’s irrevocable letter of credit (see a. above) or are fully insured by FDIC insurance.
- c. Credit Risk: This is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will be unable to fulfill its obligations. The rating of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies is designed to give an indication of credit risk. The credit quality rating for Lone Star Investment Pool was AAAm (Standard & Poor’s) and the credit quality rating for TexPool Investment Pool was AAAm (Standard & Poor’s) at August 31, 2017.
- d. Interest Rate Risk: This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. The District manages its exposure to declines in fair values by limiting the weighted average maturity of its investment portfolio to less than two years from the time of purchase. The weighted average maturity for the District’s investment pools is less than 90 days.
- e. Foreign Currency Risk: This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At August 31, 2017, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

- f. Concentration of Credit Risk: This is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of the District’s investment in a single issuer (i.e., lack of diversification). Concentration risk is defined as positions of 5 percent or more in the securities of a single issuer. Investment pools are excluded from the 5 percent disclosure requirement. Certificates of Deposit with InterBank make up 16.2% of total investments.

Public funds investment pools in Texas (“Pools”) are established under the authority of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 79 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the “Act”), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the pool and are qualified to advise the pool; 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than AAA or AAA-m or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The District’s investments in Pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the pool’s underlying portfolio, unless the pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC’s Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

The District’s investments at August 31, 2017, are shown below:

<u>Name</u>	<u>Carrying Amount</u>	<u>Market Value</u>
Lone Star Investment Pool	\$47,537,812	\$47,537,812
TexPool Investment Pool	934,602	934,602
Certificates of Deposit	<u>13,294,976</u>	<u>13,294,976</u>
	<u>\$61,767,390</u>	<u>\$61,767,390</u>

Fair Value Measurements

The District categorizes its fair value measurements with the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs. Investments that are measured at fair value using the net asset value per share (or its equivalent) as a practical expedient are not classified in the fair value hierarchy below.

In instances where inputs used to measure fair value fall into different levels in the above fair value hierarchy, fair value measurements in their entirety are categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the valuation. The District’s assessment of the significance of particular inputs to these fair value measurements requires judgement and considers factors specific to each asset or liability.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Recurring Basis

<u>Investments by Fair Value level:</u>	<u>Balance at 8/31/17</u>	<u>Fair Value Measurements Using</u>		
		<u>Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)</u>	<u>Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)</u>	<u>Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)</u>
Certificates of Deposit	\$13,294,976	\$ -	\$13,294,976	\$ -

The fair value of the certificates of deposit at August 31, 2017 was determined based on level 2 inputs. The District estimates the fair value of these investments using inputs such as interest rates and yield curves that are observable at commonly quoted intervals.

The District's investment in the State Investment Pools (statewide 2a7-like external investment pools) are not required to be measured at fair value but are measured at amortized cost.

NOTE 4. CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital asset activity for the year ended August 31, 2017, was as follows:

	<u>Balance September 1</u>	<u>Additions/ Completions</u>	<u>Retirement/ Adjustments</u>	<u>Balance August 31</u>
Governmental Activities:				
Land	\$ 12,896,129	\$ 26,940	\$ -	\$ 12,923,069
Construction in Progress	<u>8,520,572</u>	<u>55,294,828</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>63,815,400</u>
Total capital assets not being depreciated	<u>21,416,701</u>	<u>55,321,768</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>76,738,469</u>
Buildings and Improvements	193,994,277	4,690,841	-	198,685,118
Furniture and Equipment	<u>17,630,530</u>	<u>845,834</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>18,476,364</u>
Total capital assets being depreciated	<u>211,624,807</u>	<u>5,536,675</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>217,161,482</u>
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings and Improvements	(72,585,634)	(4,085,032)	-	(76,670,666)
Furniture and Equipment	<u>(11,682,766)</u>	<u>(1,532,901)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(13,215,667)</u>
Total accumulated depreciation	<u>(84,268,400)</u>	<u>(5,617,933)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(89,886,333)</u>
Total capital assets, being depreciated, net	<u>127,356,407</u>	<u>(81,258)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>127,275,149</u>
Governmental activities capital assets, net	<u>\$148,773,108</u>	<u>\$ 55,240,510</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$204,013,618</u>
Business-type activities:				
Furniture and Equipment	\$ 1,537,737	\$ 58,965	\$ -	\$ 1,596,702
Less accumulated depreciation	<u>(731,431)</u>	<u>(109,483)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(840,914)</u>
Total capital assets, being depreciated, net	<u>806,306</u>	<u>(50,518)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>755,788</u>
Business-type activities capital assets, net	<u>\$ 806,306</u>	<u>\$ (50,518)</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 755,788</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Depreciation expense was charged as direct expense to programs of the District as follows:

Governmental activities:	
Instruction	\$3,295,429
Instructional Resources & Media Services	87,342
School Leadership	149,437
Student (Pupil) Transportation	345,736
Food Services	313,697
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	879,314
General Administration	46,968
Plant Maintenance and Operations	96,115
Security	4,428
Data Processing	<u>399,467</u>
Total depreciation expense-Governmental activities	<u>\$5,617,933</u>

NOTE 5. LONG-TERM DEBT

Long-term debt includes par bonds and capital appreciation (deep discount) serial bonds. All long-term debt represents transactions in the District's governmental activities.

The District has entered into a continuing disclosure undertaking to provide Annual Reports and Material Event Notices to the State Information Depository of Texas (SID), which is the Municipal Advisory Council. This information is required under SEC Rule 15c2-12 to enable investors to analyze the financial condition and operations of the District.

The following is a summary of the changes in the District's Long-term Debt for the year ended August 31, 2017:

Description	Interest Rate Payable	Amounts Original Issue	Amounts Outstanding 9/1/2016	Issued Current Year	Interest Accretion	Retired/ Refunded	Amounts Outstanding 8/31/2017	Due Within One Year
Bonded Indebtedness:								
Unlimited Tax School Bldg. & Refunding Bonds-Series 2002	5.13-5.96%	\$34,224,017	\$ 2,534,722	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 497,513	\$ 2,037,209	\$ 430,620
Unlimited Tax School Bldg. Bonds-Series 2007	4.00-5.00%	59,249,477	1,384,270	-	-	-	1,384,270	-
Unlimited Tax School Bldg. & Refunding Bonds-Series 2010	2.00-4.34%	26,005,000	21,415,000	-	-	960,000	20,455,000	975,000
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2011	2.00-5.00%	28,621,701	27,381,701	-	-	135,000	27,246,701	135,000
Unlimited Tax Qualified School Construction-Series 2011	4.45%	2,500,000	2,500,000	-	-	-	2,500,000	-
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2013	2.00-3.50%	5,915,000	5,840,000	-	-	-	5,840,000	-
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2014	2.00-3.60%	8,595,000	8,435,000	-	-	-	8,435,000	-
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds-Series 2015	4.00-5.50%	40,990,000	40,580,000	-	-	380,000	40,200,000	400,000
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds-Series 2015	3.00-5.00%	75,000,000	74,130,000	-	-	325,000	73,805,000	340,000
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds-Series 2016	2.00-5.00%	46,545,000	<u>46,545,000</u>	-	-	<u>275,000</u>	<u>46,270,000</u>	<u>485,000</u>
Total Bonded Indebtedness:			<u>230,745,693</u>	-	-	<u>2,572,513</u>	<u>228,173,180</u>	<u>2,765,620</u>
Other Direct Obligations:								
Accreted Interest -								
Capital Appreciation Bonds			28,004,368	-	2,184,489	3,991,585	26,197,272	4,060,178
Discount and Premium on Bonds			<u>16,103,301</u>	-	-	<u>730,393</u>	<u>15,372,908</u>	-
Total Other Obligations:			<u>44,107,669</u>	-	<u>2,184,489</u>	<u>4,721,978</u>	<u>41,570,180</u>	<u>4,060,178</u>
Total Obligations of District			<u>\$274,853,362</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$2,184,489</u>	<u>\$7,294,491</u>	<u>\$269,743,360</u>	<u>\$6,825,798</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Presented below is a summary of general obligation bond requirements to maturity:

Year Ended August 31,	<u>General Obligation</u>		Total
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Requirements</u>
2018	\$ 2,765,620	\$ 13,218,086	\$ 15,983,706
2019	2,982,731	13,200,993	16,183,724
2020	3,002,618	13,181,232	16,183,850
2021	3,059,232	13,124,550	16,183,782
2022	3,126,708	13,052,961	16,179,669
2023-2027	28,462,001	55,012,368	83,474,369
2028-2032	40,844,270	39,189,868	80,034,138
2033-2037	56,665,000	24,581,969	81,246,969
2038-2042	51,250,000	13,240,075	64,490,075
2043-2047	<u>36,015,000</u>	<u>2,675,600</u>	<u>38,690,600</u>
	<u>\$228,173,180</u>	<u>\$200,477,702</u>	<u>\$428,650,882</u>

The District has five bond series that include Capital Appreciation Bonds. No interest is paid on these bonds prior to maturity. The bonds mature variously in 2018 through 2031. Interest accrues on these bonds each February 15 and August 15 even though the interest is not paid until maturity.

The District's Unlimited Tax Qualified School Construction Bonds-Series 2011 require the District to make sinking fund deposits into a sinking fund restricted to payment of the bond principal when the bonds become due in 2026. Sinking fund deposits of \$165,000 per year are required in fiscal years 2012 through 2021 and deposits of \$170,000 are required in fiscal years 2022 through 2026. The balance in the sinking fund account as of August 31, 2017 was \$990,000 and is shown in the financial statements as restricted cash in the Debt Service Fund.

General Obligation Bonds are direct obligations issued on a pledge of the general taxing power for the payment of the debt obligations of the District. General Obligation Bonds require the District to compute, at the time taxes are levied, the rate of tax required to provide (in each year bonds are outstanding) a fund to pay interest and principal at maturity. The District is in compliance with this requirement.

There are a number of limitations and restrictions contained in the various general obligation bonds indentures. The District is in compliance with all significant limitations and restrictions at August 31, 2017.

NOTE 6. DEFERRED CHARGE ON BOND REFUNDINGS

The District's deferred charge on bond refundings at August 31, 2017 is as follows:

Balance – August 31, 2016	\$4,006,822
Fiscal year 2017	
Amortization	<u>(190,801)</u>
Balance – August 31, 2017	<u>\$3,816,021</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

NOTE 7. PROPERTY TAXES

Property taxes are considered available when collected within the current period or expected to be collected soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period. The District levies its taxes on October 1 on the assessed (appraised) value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due upon receipt of the tax bill and are past due and subject to interest if not paid by February 1 of the year following the October 1 levy date. The assessed value of the property tax roll upon which the levy for the 2016-17 fiscal year was based was \$3,423,459,544. Taxes are delinquent if not paid by June 30. Delinquent taxes are subject to both penalty and interest charges plus 15 % delinquent collection fees for attorney costs.

The tax rates assessed for the year ended August 31, 2017, to finance General Fund operations and the payment of principal and interest on general obligation long-term debt were \$1.17 and \$0.3839 per \$100 valuation, respectively, for a total of \$1.5539 per \$100 valuation.

Current tax collections for the year ended August 31, 2017 were 99.4% of the year-end adjusted tax levy. Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy. Allowances for uncollectible taxes within the General and Debt Service Funds are based on historical experience in collecting taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature. As of August 31, 2017, property taxes receivable, net of estimated uncollectible taxes, totaled \$907,578 and \$277,322 for the General and Debt Service Funds, respectively.

Property taxes are recorded as receivables and unavailable revenues at the time the taxes are assessed in the governmental fund financial statements, and revenues are recognized as the related ad valorem taxes are collected.

NOTE 8. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN

Plan Description. Waxahachie Independent School District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). TRS's defined benefit pension plan is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position. Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at http://www.trs.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr_2016.pdf; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Benefits Provided. TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description above.

Contributions. Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 thru 2017. The 83rd Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84th Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

	<u>Contribution Rates</u>	
	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017</u>
Member	7.2%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
Waxahachie ISD FY2017 Employer Contributions		\$ 1,506,070
Waxahachie ISD FY2017 Member Contributions		\$ 4,031,158
Waxahachie ISD 2017 NECE On-Behalf Contributions		\$ 2,722,942

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including the TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during the fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers including public schools are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding source or a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

Actuarial Assumptions. The total pension liability in the August 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2016
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8.00%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8.00%
Inflation	2.50%
Salary Increases Including Inflation	3.50% to 9.50%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Post Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are primarily based on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

Discount Rate. The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2016 are summarized below:

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Real Return Geometric Basis	Long-Term Expected Portfolio Real Rate of Return*
Global Equity			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
Stable Value			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Stable Value Hedge Funds	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
Real Return			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
Risk Parity			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation Expectation			2.2%
Alpha	0%		1.0%
Total	<u>100%</u>		<u>8.7%</u>

* The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.

Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis. The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (7.0%)	Discount Rate (8.0%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (9.0%)
Waxahachie ISD's proportionate share of the net pension liability:	\$25,803,840	\$16,672,778	\$8,927,788

Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions. At August 31, 2017, Waxahachie Independent School District reported a liability of \$16,672,778 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to Waxahachie Independent School District. The amount recognized by Waxahachie Independent School District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with Waxahachie Independent School District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$16,672,778
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	<u>31,513,766</u>
Total	<u>\$48,186,544</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2016 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the employer's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2015 thru August 31, 2016.

At August 31, 2016 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was .0441213%, a decrease of .0009308% from its proportionate share of .0450521% at August 31, 2015.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation – There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2017, Waxahachie Independent School District recognized pension expense of \$3,270,377 and revenue of \$3,270,377 for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2017, Waxahachie Independent School District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 261,426	\$ 497,839
Changes in actuarial assumptions	508,156	462,147
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	3,212,867	1,801,051
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	4,674,748	1,083
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	1,506,070	-
Total	\$10,163,267	\$2,762,120

\$1,506,070 reported as deferred outflows of resources resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability in the year ended August 31, 2018. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year ended August 31:	Pension Expense Amount
2018	\$ 1,067,326
2019	1,067,326
2020	1,967,851
2021	998,127
2022	702,468
Thereafter	91,979

NOTE 9. SCHOOL DISTRICT RETIREE HEALTH PLAN

Plan Description. Waxahachie Independent School District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees authority to establish and amend the basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by visiting the TRS Web site at www.trs.state.tx.us, by writing to the Communications Department of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701, or by calling 1-800-223-8778.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Funding Policy. Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code, Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public school contributions, respectively. The State of Texas and active public school employee contribution rates were 1.0% and 0.65% of public school payroll, respectively, with school districts contributing a percentage of payroll set at 0.55% for fiscal years 2017, 2016 and 2015. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. For the years ended August 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, the State's contributions to TRS-Care were \$496,417, \$470,709, and \$416,088, respectively, the active member contributions were \$340,292, \$323,844, and \$300,992, respectively, and the school district's contribution were \$315,050, \$301,537, and \$301,660, respectively, which equaled the required contributions each year.

The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. These on-behalf payments are recognized as equal revenues and expenditures/expenses by the District. For the year ended August 31, 2017, the contribution made on behalf of the District was \$158,134.

NOTE 10. HEALTH CARE

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of Waxahachie Independent School District were covered by a health insurance plan (the Plan). The District contributed \$225 per month per employee to the Plan and employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay any additional contribution and contributions for dependents. All contributions were paid to a fully insured plan.

NOTE 11. INTERFUND BALANCES AND ACTIVITIES

Interfund receivables and payables at August 31, 2017 represented short-term advances between funds. These amounts are expected to be repaid in less than one year from August 31, 2017.

<u>Fund</u>	<u>Due from Other Funds</u>	<u>Due to Other Funds</u>
Major Governmental Funds:		
General Fund:		
Special Revenue Fund	\$ 154	\$ -
Enterprise Fund	<u>372</u>	<u>-</u>
Total Major Governmental Funds	<u>526</u>	<u>-</u>
Major Enterprise Fund:		
General Fund	<u>-</u>	<u>372</u>
Total Major Enterprise Fund	<u>-</u>	<u>372</u>
Other Funds:		
General Fund	<u>-</u>	<u>154</u>
Total	<u>\$ 526</u>	<u>\$ 526</u>

NOTE 12. DUE FROM OTHER GOVERNMENTS

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation, Per Capita, Existing Debt Allotment, and Instruction Facilities Allotment Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of August 31, 2017, are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Due from Other Governments.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Fund	State Entitlements	Federal Grants	Local Governments	Total
General	\$3,070,792	\$ 904,417	\$ 4,446	\$3,979,655
Debt Service	30,221	-	-	30,221
Special Revenue	509,725	730,899	-	1,240,624
Enterprise	-	99,517	-	99,517
Total	<u>\$3,610,738</u>	<u>\$1,734,833</u>	<u>\$ 4,446</u>	<u>\$5,350,017</u>

NOTE 13. LITIGATION AND CONTINGENCIES

The District participates in numerous state and Federal grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, if any, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable at August 31, 2017 may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.

NOTE 14. REVENUES FROM LOCAL AND INTERMEDIATE SOURCES

During the current year, governmental fund revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

	General Fund	Special Revenue Funds	Debt Service Fund	Capital Projects Fund	Total
Property Taxes	\$39,023,923	\$ -	\$12,798,271	\$ -	\$51,822,194
Investment Income	210,976	2,523	51,907	531,582	796,988
Penalties, interest and other tax related income	230,256	-	73,633	-	303,889
Co-curricular and student activities	222,351	568,461	-	-	790,812
Other	<u>721,135</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>6,274</u>	<u>727,409</u>
Total	<u>\$40,408,641</u>	<u>\$ 570,984</u>	<u>\$12,923,811</u>	<u>\$537,856</u>	<u>\$54,441,292</u>

NOTE 15. UNEARNED REVENUE

Unearned revenue at August 31, 2017 consisted of the following:

	General Fund	Special Revenue Funds	Debt Service Fund	Enterprise Funds	Total
State Funding	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Athletic Receipts	50,448	-	-	-	50,448
Student Balances	-	-	-	78,308	78,308
Other	<u>20,661</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>1,991</u>	<u>22,652</u>
	<u>\$71,109</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$80,299</u>	<u>\$151,408</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 NOTES TO THE BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

NOTE 16. JOINT VENTURES-SHARED SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS

The District is the fiscal agent for Shared Services Arrangements (“SSA’S) which provide deaf education to member districts. In addition to the District, other member districts include Ferris ISD and Milford ISD.

All services are provided by the fiscal agent. According to guidance provided in TEA’s Resource Guide, the District has accounted for the fiscal agent’s activities of the SSA’S in Special Revenues Funds. Expenditures of the SSA’S are summarized below:

	Fund 315 IDEA, Part B Discretionary <u>Deaf</u>	Fund 340 IDEA, Part C Early <u>Intervention</u>	Fund 435 Regional Day School <u>Deaf</u>
Waxahachie ISD	\$ 7,231	\$ 80	\$31,292
Ferris ISD	5,423	-	23,469
Milford ISD	<u>1,808</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>7,823</u>
Total	<u>\$14,462</u>	<u>\$ 80</u>	<u>\$62,584</u>

NOTE 17. CONSTRUCTION COMMITMENTS

As of August 31, 2017, the District had entered into construction contracts for construction of a new high school totaling \$117,724,543. At August 31, 2017, there was \$55,470,919 remaining costs under these contracts. These costs will be paid from the District’s Capital Projects Fund.

NOTE 18. EXCESS OF EXPENDITURES OVER APPROPRIATIONS BY FUNCTION

The Texas Education Agency requires the budgets for certain Governmental fund types to be filed with the Texas Education Agency. The budget should not be exceeded in any functional category under TEA requirements. Expenditures exceeded appropriations in one functional category in the General Fund by \$399 for the year ended August 31, 2017.

This page left blank intentionally.

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT G-1

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.0441213%	0.0450521%	0.0232896%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 16,672,778	\$ 15,925,318	\$ 6,220,974
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District	31,513,766	28,595,115	24,125,762
Total	<u>\$ 48,186,544</u>	<u>\$ 44,520,433</u>	<u>\$ 30,346,736</u>
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 49,822,143	\$ 46,306,390	\$ 41,908,789
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered-Employee Payroll	33.46%	34.39%	14.84%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only three years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS
FOR FISCAL YEAR 2017

EXHIBIT G-2

	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 1,506,070	\$ 1,406,647	\$ 1,334,006
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(1,506,070)	(1,406,647)	(1,334,006)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	\$ -0-	\$ -0-	\$ -0-
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 52,352,753	\$ 49,822,143	\$ 46,306,390
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered-Employee Payroll	2.88%	2.82%	2.88%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 for the respective fiscal years.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, the years of data presented this reporting period are those for which data is available. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION
PENSION INFORMATION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

PENSION INFORMATION

Changes of benefit terms.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

Changes of assumptions.

There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

COMBINING SCHEDULES

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
 AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	205 Head Start	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool
ASSETS				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ (9,056)	\$ (232,857)	\$ (198,488)	\$ (3,618)
1240 Receivables from Other Governments	10,313	335,053	288,938	3,618
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 1,257</u>	<u>\$ 102,196</u>	<u>\$ 90,450</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
LIABILITIES				
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ 46	\$ 22,500	\$ 256	\$ -
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	1,057	79,696	90,194	-
2170 Due to Other Funds	154	-	-	-
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>1,257</u>	<u>102,196</u>	<u>90,450</u>	<u>-</u>
FUND BALANCES				
Restricted Fund Balance:				
3450 Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-	-
Committed Fund Balance:				
3545 Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
4000 Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 1,257</u>	<u>\$ 102,196</u>	<u>\$ 90,450</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

242 Summer Feeding Program	244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition	288 Reading Recovery	289 Summer School LEP	315 SSA IDEA, Part B Discretionary	340 SSA - IDEA C Deaf - Early Intervention
\$ -	\$ (7,619)	\$ (63,531)	\$ (9,522)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ (11,824)	\$ (80)
-	7,619	63,931	9,522	-	-	11,824	80
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 400</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ 400	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	400	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 400</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
 AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	397 Advanced Placement Incentives	410 State Textbook Fund	428 Pre-K Grant	429 Other State Special Revenue Funds	
ASSETS					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 5,125	\$ (8,681)	\$ (28,638)	\$ 3,749
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	-	402,914	96,632	-
1000	Total Assets	<u>\$ 5,125</u>	<u>\$ 394,233</u>	<u>\$ 67,994</u>	<u>\$ 3,749</u>
LIABILITIES					
2110	Accounts Payable	\$ -	\$ 388,100	\$ 67,994	\$ -
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	-	-	-	-
2170	Due to Other Funds	-	-	-	-
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>-</u>	<u>388,100</u>	<u>67,994</u>	<u>-</u>
FUND BALANCES					
Restricted Fund Balance:					
3450	Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	5,125	6,133	-	3,749
Committed Fund Balance:					
3545	Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>5,125</u>	<u>6,133</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>3,749</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 5,125</u>	<u>\$ 394,233</u>	<u>\$ 67,994</u>	<u>\$ 3,749</u>

435 SSA Regional Day School - Deaf	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ (10,180)	\$ 418,955	\$ (156,265)
10,180	-	1,240,624
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 418,955</u>	<u>\$ 1,084,359</u>
\$ -	\$ 3,112	\$ 482,408
-	-	170,947
-	-	154
<u>-</u>	<u>3,112</u>	<u>653,509</u>
-	-	15,007
-	415,843	415,843
<u>-</u>	<u>415,843</u>	<u>430,850</u>
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 418,955</u>	<u>\$ 1,084,359</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	205	211	224	225
	Head Start	ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	IDEA - Part B Formula	IDEA - Part B Preschool
REVENUES:				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
5800 State Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5900 Federal Program Revenues	42,220	1,252,404	1,138,996	18,902
5020 Total Revenues	42,220	1,252,404	1,138,996	18,902
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	41,313	1,229,167	201,827	1,538
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	-	-	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	299	23,089	597	-
0021 Instructional Leadership	-	-	-	-
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	-	-	936,572	17,364
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0041 General Administration	-	-	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	608	-	-	-
0061 Community Services	-	148	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	42,220	1,252,404	1,138,996	18,902
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

242 Summer Feeding Program	244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition	288 Reading Recovery	289 Summer School LEP	315 SSA IDEA, Part B Discretionary	340 SSA - IDEA C Deaf - Early Intervention
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
8,644	77,474	206,217	60,939	115	3,495	14,462	80
8,644	77,474	206,217	60,939	115	3,495	14,462	80
-	67,322	-	60,154	115	3,495	14,462	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	2,365	72,294	785	-	-	-	80
-	2,791	133,923	-	-	-	-	-
-	4,996	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8,644	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8,644	77,474	206,217	60,939	115	3,495	14,462	80
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	397 Advanced Placement Incentives	410 State Textbook Fund	428 Pre-K Grant	429 Other State Special Revenue Funds
REVENUES:				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
5800 State Program Revenues	6,300	601,492	122,385	22,048
5900 Federal Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5020 Total Revenues	<u>6,300</u>	<u>601,492</u>	<u>122,385</u>	<u>22,048</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	-	610,150	115,583	492
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	-	-	25
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	6,000	-	1,125	19,066
0021 Instructional Leadership	-	-	-	-
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	-	-	5,677	-
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-	-
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0041 General Administration	-	-	-	-
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	-	-	-	-
0061 Community Services	-	-	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>6,000</u>	<u>610,150</u>	<u>122,385</u>	<u>19,583</u>
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	300	(8,658)	-	2,465
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	4,825	14,791	-	1,284
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 5,125</u>	<u>\$ 6,133</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 3,749</u>

435 SSA Regional Day School - Deaf	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ 570,984	\$ 570,984
62,584	-	814,809
-	-	2,823,948
62,584	570,984	4,209,741
59,741	390,797	2,796,156
-	42,742	42,767
2,843	1,032	129,575
-	-	136,714
-	-	964,609
-	46	46
-	-	8,644
-	129,445	129,445
-	212	212
-	-	608
-	-	148
62,584	564,274	4,208,924
-	6,710	817
-	409,133	430,033
\$ -	\$ 415,843	\$ 430,850

This page left blank intentionally.

REQUIRED T.E.A. SCHEDULES

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Last 10 Years Ended August 31	(1)	(2)	(3)
	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2008 and prior years	Various	Various	\$ Various
2009	1.040000	0.320000	2,753,803,241
2010	1.040000	0.320000	2,825,334,510
2011	1.040000	0.388900	2,795,858,079
2012	1.040000	0.388900	2,779,925,482
2013	1.040000	0.388900	2,792,898,661
2014	1.040000	0.388900	2,823,292,880
2015	1.170000	0.258900	2,989,789,853
2016	1.170000	0.383900	3,158,322,090
2017 (School year under audit)	1.170000	0.383900	3,423,459,544
1000 TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 9/1/2016	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 8/31/2017
\$ 69,790	\$ -	\$ 309	\$ (98)	\$ (1,729)	\$ 67,850
29,643	-	(392)	(120)	(1,819)	28,336
40,322	-	1,026	316	(3,464)	35,516
49,178	-	3,846	1,438	(3,957)	39,937
69,377	-	45,988	17,197	98,178	104,370
80,742	-	41,047	15,349	87,132	111,478
93,416	-	42,422	15,863	80,757	115,888
144,934	-	71,681	15,862	82,705	140,096
389,543	-	207,707	68,153	122,194	235,877
-	51,717,343	38,596,616	12,664,312	(126,682)	329,733
<u>\$ 966,945</u>	<u>\$ 51,717,343</u>	<u>\$ 39,010,250</u>	<u>\$ 12,798,272</u>	<u>\$ 333,315</u>	<u>\$ 1,209,081</u>

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 1,487,900	\$ 1,487,900	\$ 1,281,349	\$ (206,551)
5800	State Program Revenues	112,636	112,636	71,544	(41,092)
5020	Total Revenues	1,600,536	1,600,536	1,352,893	(247,643)
EXPENDITURES:					
0035	Food Services	3,820,494	3,939,831	3,729,601	210,230
0051	Plant Maintenance and Operations	78,060	78,060	70,204	7,856
Capital Outlay:					
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	30,000	185,663	-	185,663
6030	Total Expenditures	3,928,554	4,203,554	3,799,805	403,749
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(2,328,018)	(2,603,018)	(2,446,912)	156,106
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):					
7952	National School Breakfast Program	475,000	475,000	469,072	(5,928)
7953	National School Lunch Program	1,675,000	1,675,000	1,692,524	17,524
7954	Donated Commodities (USDA)	190,303	190,303	258,687	68,384
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	2,340,303	2,340,303	2,420,283	79,980
1200	Change in Net Position	12,285	(262,715)	(26,629)	236,086
0100	Total Net Position - September 1	1,458,505	1,458,505	1,458,505	-
3000	Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 1,470,790	\$ 1,195,790	\$ 1,431,876	\$ 236,086

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - DEBT SERVICE FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 12,797,696	\$ 12,888,770	\$ 12,923,811	\$ 35,041
5800	State Program Revenues	-	463,386	489,976	26,590
5900	Federal Program Revenues	100,000	103,573	103,574	1
5020	Total Revenues	12,897,696	13,455,729	13,517,361	61,632
EXPENDITURES:					
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long Term Debt	165,000	2,297,513	2,297,513	-
0072	Interest on Long Term Debt	12,582,531	11,149,289	11,149,289	-
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	6,000	6,000	5,300	700
6030	Total Expenditures	12,753,531	13,452,802	13,452,102	700
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	144,165	2,927	65,259	62,332
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	2,379,035	2,379,035	2,379,035	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 2,523,200	\$ 2,381,962	\$ 2,444,294	\$ 62,332

This page left blank intentionally.

FEDERAL AWARDS SECTION

This page left blank intentionally.

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF
CERTIFIED PUBLIC
ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED
PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

**HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON,
TONN & SEAY**
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977
TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER
FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS
BASED ON AN AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS PERFORMED
IN ACCORDANCE WITH *GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS*

To the Board of Trustees
Waxahachie Independent School District
Waxahachie, Texas

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Waxahachie Independent School District, as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise Waxahachie Independent School District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report dated November 27, 2017.

Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the District's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or, significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

Compliance and Other Matters

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

Purpose of this Report

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of the audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

November 27, 2017

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF
CERTIFIED PUBLIC
ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED
PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

**HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON,
TONN & SEAY**
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION

CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977
TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT ON COMPLIANCE FOR EACH MAJOR PROGRAM AND ON
INTERNAL CONTROL OVER COMPLIANCE REQUIRED BY THE UNIFORM GUIDANCE

To the Board of Trustees
Waxahachie Independent School District
Waxahachie, Texas

Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program

We have audited Waxahachie Independent School District's compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the *OMB Compliance Supplement* that could have a direct and material effect on each of Waxahachie Independent School District's major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2017. Waxahachie Independent School District's major federal programs are identified in the summary of auditors' results section of the accompanying schedule of finding and questioned costs.

Management's Responsibility

Management is responsible for compliance with the requirements of laws, regulations, contracts, and grants applicable to its federal programs.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of Waxahachie Independent School District's major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Costs Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about Waxahachie Independent School District's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination of Waxahachie Independent School District's compliance.

Opinion on Each Major Federal Program

In our opinion, Waxahachie Independent School District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on each of its major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2017.

Report on Internal Control Over Compliance

Management of Waxahachie Independent School District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered Waxahachie Independent School District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of Waxahachie Independent School District's internal control over compliance.

A deficiency in internal control over compliance exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. *A material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. *A significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

November 27, 2017

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

I. Summary of Auditor's Results

1. Type of auditor's report issued on the financial statements: Unmodified.
2. Internal control over financial reporting:
Material weakness(es) identified: None
Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses: None reported
3. Noncompliance which is material to the financial statements: None
4. Internal controls over major federal programs:
Material weakness(es) identified: None
Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses: None reported
5. Type of auditor's report on compliance for major federal programs: Unmodified.
6. Did the audit disclose findings which are required to be reported in accordance with 2 CFR 200.516(a)?: No
7. Major programs include:

Special Education Cluster:
CFDA 84.027 IDEA-Part B, Formula
CFDA 84.027 IDEA-Part B, Discretionary
CFDA 84.173 IDEA-Part B, Preschool

CFDA 84.367A ESEA, Title II, Part A, Teacher/Principal Training
8. Dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs: \$750,000.
9. Low risk auditee: Yes

II. Findings Related to the Financial Statements

None

III. Other Findings and Findings and Questioned Costs Related to Federal Awards

None

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF STATUS OF PRIOR FINDINGS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

No prior year findings.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN

None required.

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
 SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

(1) FEDERAL GRANTOR/ PASS-THROUGH GRANTOR/ PROGRAM or CLUSTER TITLE	(2) Federal CFDA Number	(3) Pass-Through Entity Identifying Number	(4) Federal Expenditures
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION			
<u>Passed Through Texas Woman's University</u>			
Reading Recovery	84.396A	17-56002	\$ 115
Total Passed Through Texas Woman's University			\$ 115
<u>Passed Through Region 10 Education Service Center</u>			
Title III, Part A - English Language Acquisition	84.365A	17671001057950	\$ 60,939
Total Passed Through Region 10 Education Service Center			\$ 60,939
<u>Passed Through State Department of Education</u>			
ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	17610101070912	\$ 1,275,083
*IDEA - Part B, Formula	84.027	176600010709126600	1,159,994
*SSA - IDEA - Part B, Discretionary	84.027	176600110709126673	14,462
Total CFDA Number 84.027			1,174,456
*IDEA - Part B, Preschool	84.173	176610010709126610	18,902
Total Special Education Cluster (IDEA)			1,193,358
Career and Technical - Basic Grant	84.048	17420006070912	77,474
SSA - IDEA, Part C - Early Intervention (Deaf)	84.181A	173911010709123911	80
ESEA, Title II, Part A, Teacher/Principal Training	84.367A	17694501070912	210,019
Summer School LEP	84.369A	69551702	3,495
Total Passed Through State Department of Education			\$ 2,759,509
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION			\$ 2,820,563
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES			
<u>Passed Through Texas Dept. of Health & Human Svcs.</u>			
Medicaid Administrative Claiming Program - MAC	93.778	CTX-01-071	\$ 34,172
Total Passed Through Texas Dept. of Health & Human Svcs.			\$ 34,172
<u>Passed Through Region 10 Education Service Center</u>			
Head Start	93.600	06C7092	\$ 42,220
Total Passed Through Region 10 Education Service Center			\$ 42,220
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES			\$ 76,392
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE			
<u>Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture</u>			
*School Breakfast Program	10.553	71401701	\$ 469,072
*National School Lunch Program - Cash Assistance	10.555	71301701	1,692,523
*National School Lunch Prog. - Non-Cash Assistance	10.555	71301701	258,687
Total CFDA Number 10.555			1,951,210
*Summer Feeding Program - Cash Assistance	10.559	TX-070-1007	8,644
Total Child Nutrition Cluster			2,428,926
Total Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture			\$ 2,428,926
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE			\$ 2,428,926
TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS			\$ 5,325,881

*Clustered Programs

WAXAHACHIE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES ON ACCOUNTING POLICIES FOR FEDERAL AWARDS
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

1. The District uses the fund types specified in Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide. Special Revenue Funds are used to account for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by a grantor. Federal and state financial assistance generally is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund. Generally, unused balances are returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.
2. The accounting and financial reporting treatment applied to a fund is determined by its measurement focus. The Governmental Fund types are accounted for using a current financial resources measurement focus. All Federal grant funds were accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund which is a Governmental Fund type. With this measurement focus, only current assets and current liabilities and the fund balance are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present increases and decreases in net current assets.

The modified accrual basis of accounting is used for the Governmental Fund types and Agency Funds. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become susceptible to accrual, i.e., both measurable and available, and expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest on Long-Term Debt, which is recognized when due, and certain compensated absences and claims and judgments, which are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Federal grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant, and, accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as deferred revenues until earned.

3. The District participates in numerous state and Federal grant programs that are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, if any, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable at August 31, 2017, may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are not significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provisions has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.
4. The District also received \$1,733,796 of School Health and Related Services (SHARS) payments recorded in the General Fund and \$103,574 of interest subsidy payments on its Qualified School Construction Bonds recorded in the Debt Service Fund. These payments are not considered Federal awards for purposes of The Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards, but are included in federal revenue on Exhibit C-3.

This page left blank intentionally.

Financial Advisory Services
Provided By:

SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.